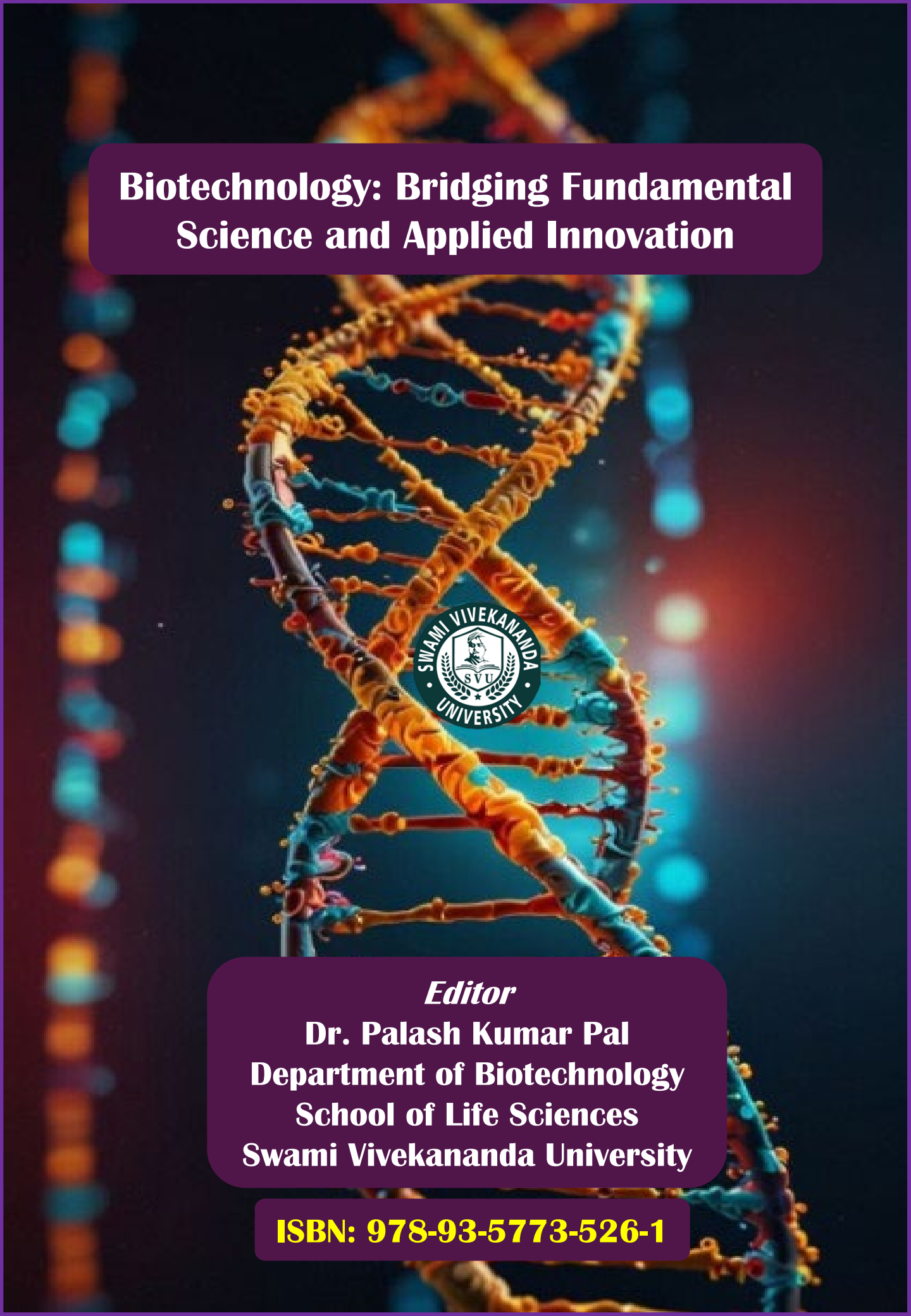
Biotechnology: Bridging Fundamental Science and Applied Innovation



Editor

Dr. Palash Kumar Pal
Department of Biotechnology
School of Life Sciences
Swami Vivekananda University

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Biotechnology: Bridging Fundamental Science and Applied Innovation

ISBN Number: 978-93-5773-526-1

Editor:

Dr. Palash Kumar Pal

Swami Vivekananda University

2026

- **Published by:** Swami Vivekananda University
- **Publication year:** March, 2026
- **ISBN:** 978-93-5655-163-3
- **Editor:** Dr. Palash Kumar Pal, Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata- 700121

Declaration by the Editor

I hereby declare that the book titled **"Biotechnology: Bridging Fundamental Science and Applied Innovation"** has been edited under my supervision. I have carefully reviewed the manuscript for clarity, coherence, structure, and language, and ensured that it meets the required academic and publishing standards.

To the best of my knowledge, the content of this book is original and has not been published elsewhere in the same form. All sources used by the author(s) have been duly acknowledged, and any necessary permissions have been obtained where applicable.

I confirm that this book is suitable for publication and dissemination.

PREFACE

Biotechnology stands at the crossroads of scientific discovery and practical innovation. By harnessing the molecular machinery of living systems, it has transformed the way humanity approaches challenges in medicine, agriculture, industry, and environmental management. Biotechnology: Bridging Fundamental Science and Applied Innovation has been written to offer readers a coherent and comprehensive journey through this expansive field - one that honors the rigor of foundational science while illuminating the extraordinary possibilities that emerge when that science is translated into application.

At its core, biotechnology is an integrative discipline. It draws upon the principles of molecular biology, biochemistry, genetics, microbiology, and cell biology, weaving them together into a framework capable of addressing some of the most pressing challenges of our time. This book reflects that integrative spirit. Rather than treating fundamental concepts and applied innovations as separate domains, it presents them as deeply interconnected - each informing, enriching, and advancing the other.

The text begins by establishing the molecular and cellular foundations upon which modern biotechnology rests. Subsequent chapters explore the diverse domains in which biotechnology has made and continues to make transformative contributions. In the biomedical arena, advances in biopharmaceuticals, vaccine development, regenerative medicine, and personalized therapeutics have redefined the boundaries of healthcare. Agricultural biotechnology has given rise to improved crop varieties, enhanced nutritional profiles, and more sustainable farming practices. Industrial biotechnology, meanwhile, leverages microbial and enzymatic processes to produce biofuels, biodegradable materials, and high-value chemicals, offering environmentally conscious alternatives to conventional manufacturing.

Environmental biotechnology receives equal attention, with discussions centered on bioremediation, waste treatment, biosensing, and the role of microorganisms in sustaining ecological balance. As concerns over climate change, resource depletion, and environmental degradation intensify, the contributions of biotechnology to sustainability become ever more significant. This book encourages readers to view biotechnology not only as a set of technical capabilities, but as a discipline with profound ethical, social, and environmental dimensions.

Designed for undergraduate and postgraduate students of life sciences, biotechnology, and allied disciplines, this book also serves as a useful reference for researchers, educators, and professionals seeking a structured overview of the field. It is written with the conviction that a strong grounding in fundamental science is not in tension with applied innovation - rather, it is its most reliable foundation.

***Biotechnology: Bridging Fundamental Science and Applied Innovation** aspires to equip readers with both the conceptual clarity and the intellectual curiosity necessary to engage meaningfully with a field that is reshaping life as we know it. It is an invitation to explore the remarkable space where scientific understanding meets human ingenuity - and where the unseen mechanisms of life are transformed into visible, tangible change.*

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

A work of this scope and ambition is never the product of a single mind or a solitary effort. ***Biotechnology: Bridging Fundamental Science and Applied Innovation*** has taken shape through the collective contributions, encouragement, and expertise of many individuals, and it is with sincere gratitude that their support is acknowledged here.

First and foremost, profound appreciation is extended to the scientific community - the researchers, scholars, and pioneering thinkers whose decades of dedicated inquiry have built the intellectual edifice upon which this book rests. The discoveries in molecular biology, genetics, biochemistry, and applied biotechnology that are discussed throughout these pages are testaments to the tireless curiosity and commitment of countless scientists across the world. Their published works, landmark studies, and groundbreaking innovations have served as both the foundation and the inspiration for this text.

The editor wish to express heartfelt thanks to colleagues, mentors and peers whose critical engagement, scholarly feedback, stimulating discussions and support have immeasurably enriched the content and perspective of this work. Their willingness to share expertise across disciplines - spanning biomedical research, agricultural biotechnology, industrial processes, environmental science, and emerging technologies - has been invaluable in ensuring that the text reflects the truly integrative nature of modern biotechnology.

Sincere appreciation is also extended to the all the teaching and administrative staffs of the Swami Vivekananda University including production team, whose professionalism, attention to detail, and unwavering commitment to quality have been instrumental in bringing this volume to fruition. Their efforts in shaping the manuscript into its final form deserve both recognition and admiration.

The students and learners who have engaged with earlier iterations of this material deserve special acknowledgement. Their questions, curiosity, and intellectual enthusiasm have been a constant reminder of why accessible, rigorous, and inspiring educational resources matter. It is ultimately for them - and for the generations of scientists, researchers, and innovators yet to come - that this book has been written.

It is hoped that *Biotechnology: Bridging Fundamental Science and Applied Innovation* will serve as a worthy contribution to the literature of a field that continues to reshape our understanding of life, health, and the world around us. Any merits this book possesses belong to all those acknowledged here; its shortcomings remain the sole responsibility of the authors.

Palash Kumar Pal

Dr. Palash Kumar Pal
Assistant Professor
Department of Biotechnology
School of Life Sciences
Swami Vivekananda University

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

ABOUT THE EDITOR

Dr. Palash Kumar Pal is an Assistant Professor in the Department of Biotechnology at Swami Vivekananda University, Kolkata, where he has been serving since June 2025. He earned his Ph.D. in 2016 from the Department of Zoology, Visva-Bharati, under the supervision of Prof. Saumen Kumar Maitra, with a doctoral thesis focused on the physiology of gut melatonin and gastrointestinal functions in the carp Catla catla. He completed his Master's in Zoology from Visva-Bharati, securing First Rank in Merit.

Dr. Pal's research spans gastrointestinal pathophysiology, chronobiology, neurobiology, and environmental toxicology, with a particular focus on the pleiotropic roles of melatonin as a cytoprotective and antioxidant molecule. His doctoral and postdoctoral investigations have systematically elucidated how melatonin regulates gut function, counters oxidative stress, and modulates inflammatory pathways in response to pharmacological, hormonal, and environmental stressors. His postdoctoral work, supported by the prestigious UGC- Dr. D. S. Kothari Fellowship (2017–2020), examined melatonin's protective effects against adrenaline-induced gastrointestinal injury in Wistar rats. Subsequent post-doctoral research positions at the University of Calcutta (2022-2024) and ICAR-CIFRI (2021-2022) extended his expertise to arsenic-induced neuroinflammation, hippocampal neurogenesis, and the captive breeding of the endangered Hilsa fish, respectively.

To date, Dr. Pal has authored 31 international publications - comprising 21 original research articles, 8 review articles, and 2 book chapters - accumulating 560 citations, an h-index of 13, an i10-index of 18, and a cumulative impact factor exceeding 52. His work has appeared in journals such as Fish Physiology and Biochemistry, Environmental Geochemistry and Health, Food and Chemical Toxicology, Life Sciences, BioFactors, Heliyon, Bioscience Reports, Biological Rhythm Research, and Melatonin Research. He serves as a peer reviewer for high-impact journals of different international publishers including Elsevier, Taylor and Francis, Springer Nature, Portland Press, etc.

Dr. Pal has been recognised with several competitive honours, including the International Travel Award from the North American Society for Comparative Endocrinology (NASCE) and a DBT International Travel Grant for presenting his research at the University of Ottawa, Canada (2015), and the Best Poster Award at the 1st Indian Fisheries Outlook (2022). He is proficient in an extensive array of biochemical and molecular techniques, including atomic absorption spectroscopy, flow cytometry, immunohistochemistry, Western blotting, and primary cell culture. An active member of the Indian Science Congress, Dr. Pal combines rigorous scientific inquiry with a commitment to mentoring the next generation of life scientists.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

LIST OF CORRESPONDING AUTHORS


Dr. Pritha Pal


Dr. Priyankar Pal


Dr. Samudra Pal


Dr. Debjit De


Dr. Sibasish Baksi


Dr. Priyajit Banerjee


Dr. Debaprasad Koner


Dr. Bidisha Ghosh


Dr. Suranjana Sarkar


Rupesh Dutta Banik


Dr. Subhashis Sarkar


Dr. Semanti Ghosh


Dr. Aishwarya Guha


Priyanka Chakraborty

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

ABOUT THE CORRESPONDING AUTHORS

Dr. Pritha Pal is an Assistant Professor in the Department of Microbiology at Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata, where she also serves as Head of the department. She holds a Ph.D. and has been teaching and researching since 2020. Her research interests span cancer biology, environmental toxicology (metal remediation), and microbial biotechnology. Dr. Pal has authored numerous scientific publications and contributed to studies on microbial impacts and metal resistance.

Dr. Priyankar Pal is a reproductive toxicologist with over six years of research experience using rodent models, focusing on environmentally induced male reproductive disorders and their amelioration through nutritional antioxidants. He earned his Ph.D. in 2024 with a thesis on fluoride-induced reproductive toxicity and the protective roles of vitamins C and E. His research expertise includes animal handling, histology, histomorphometry, biochemical assays, and molecular techniques such as PCR, ELISA, FACS, and immunofluorescence. Dr. Pal has authored more than eight peer reviewed research articles and contributed extensively to book chapters as first author, co-author, and corresponding author. He has over three years of teaching experience in Zoology and Biotechnology and is currently serving as an Assistant Professor of Biotechnology. His research interests span reproductive toxicology, oxidative stress, immunotoxicology, and molecular mechanisms of environmental toxicants.

Dr. Samudra Pal is an Assistant Professor of Biotechnology at Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, specializing in Human Genetics and Genomics. He holds a Ph.D. in 2024 in Human Genetics from the University of Calcutta, where he explored the molecular mechanisms underlying male infertility, with a particular focus on identifying rare and novel genetic variants associated with azoospermia and spermatogenic failure. He has also been honored with multiple awards, such as INSPIRE-SHE 2013, CSIR NET Dec 2017, and first-class-first in M.Sc. in Zoology. Dr. Pal's broader research vision is oriented toward the advancement of precision diagnostics and biomarker discovery in reproductive medicine, with the long-term goal of translating genetic insights into clinically actionable tools for the diagnosis and management of male infertility. He is currently working on therapeutic bioactive compounds that can ameliorate neuronal damage due to altered immune response.

Dr. Debaprasad Koner earned his Ph.D. in Zoology from North-Eastern Hill University, Shillong focusing on the protective role of nitric oxide during stress response. He served as Research Associate-II in a SERB-funded project on hypoxia adaptation. His expertise includes NGS, RT-PCR, Western blotting, immunocytochemistry, HPLC, and primary hepatocyte culture. He is committed to advancing research in stress physiology and molecular toxicology.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Dr. Debjit De is currently serving as Assistant Professor in the Department of Biotechnology at Swami Vivekananda University. He obtained his Ph.D. in Computational Biology and Applied Microbiology from Jadavpur University, where his research focused on gut microbiota in Indian Type 2 diabetic patients. His expertise spans microbial metagenomics, host–microbe interactions, machine learning applications in human disease, and NGS data analysis. Previously, he worked as a Senior Research Data Analyst at National Institute of Biomedical Genomics, contributing to high-throughput microbiome research. Dr. De has authored multiple peer- reviewed publications, book chapters, and a published patent, and actively serves as mentors for students while organizing advanced bioinformatics training programs.

Dr. Bidisha Ghosh is presently serving as an Assistant Professor in the Department of Biotechnology in the School of Life Sciences, in the prestigious Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore. She has completed her PhD in Biophysics from Jadavpur University in 2024. Just after her Masters in Biotechnology from the Department of Life Science & Biotechnology, Jadavpur University in 2012. Dr Ghosh served as a Research Trainee in Herbicure Healthcare Bioherbal Research foundation where she continued in the role till 2017. Dr Ghosh has been working with nano materials and her thesis work entails synthesis of varied kinds of nanomaterials and exploring their potential in waste water management along with their biological applications. She has contributed to 37 Peer Reviewed Journals, 48 Book Chapters and 01 Filed Patent (National). She has attended various National and International Conferences and has won several awards in the same. Dr Ghosh has worked as a CO-PI in the ICSSR Vision Viksit Bharat 2047 Collaborative Research Project (funded by Govt. of India) entitled “Post Covid Era and the Zero Generation: Vulnerability, Resilience and Adaptive Capacity in Ageing Communities of Select Urban Spaces of North-east India”. Dr Ghosh is a member of Society of Conservation Biology.

Dr. Sibashish Baksi is an Assistant Professor at Swami Vivekananda University (SVU) with expertise in biomass valorization and sustainable bioprocess development. He completed his PhD in Chemical Engineering at Jadavpur University, where he specialized in biomass pretreatment and enzymatic hydrolysis. He also serves as a Postdoctoral Researcher at University of Milan-Bicocca, contributing to the Agro2Circular project focused on waste upcycling and circular bioeconomy strategies. His research centers on microbial fermentation, metabolic engineering, and process optimization for the production of value-added bioproducts. He has extensive experience in bioreactor operations, HPLC-based metabolite analysis, and statistical experimental design using Central Composite Design (CCD). Dr. Baksi is dedicated to advancing sustainable biotechnological solutions through interdisciplinary research, innovation, and academic mentorship.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Dr. Suranjana Sarkar holds a Bachelor's, Master's, and Ph.D. degree in Microbiology. Her doctoral research was centered on Drug Discovery and Rational Drug Design. Her research is fundamentally grounded in microbiology, with emphasis on microbial pathogenesis, antimicrobial strategies, and the development of therapeutics targeting infectious diseases. She has published in peer-reviewed journals, and her ongoing research interests focus on combinational antimicrobial systems, comparative evaluation of natural and synthetic therapeutics, and systems biology– driven drug–target interaction and safety profiling along with ML-assisted quantum chemical computational based drug designing. Dr. Sarkar is committed to advancing microbiology- driven therapeutic innovation and mentoring emerging researchers in interdisciplinary life sciences. At Swami Vivekananda University, she teaches both Undergraduate and Postgraduate courses in Biotechnology and Microbiology, delivering core and applied subjects including *General Microbiology, Microbial Genetics, Biochemistry, Quality Assurance and Quality Control, and Medical Coding & Scribing*. She integrates foundational microbiology with translational and industry-oriented perspectives in her teaching. She is committed to student mentorship, providing personalized academic guidance and professional development support to foster students' holistic growth and research excellence. She effectively balances research and academics, aiming excellence in both scientific inquiry and student learning.

Dr. Subhasis Sarkar, an Assistant Professor in Microbiology of Swami Vivekananda University, has completed his Ph.D in Biotechnology from University of Calcutta in 2014. After completing this journey, he served the department of Molecular biology & Bioinformatics, Tripura University (A Central University) as Guest Faculty, from September, 2014 till May, 2015. Thereafter, he contributed as Senior Project Fellow at the Institute of Environmental Studies and Wetland Management till 2016. Later on, he served as Assistant Professor in Microbiology in Kingston College of Science together with has served as Guest Faculty in Panihati College and West Bengal State University in various department including Food & Nutrition and Microbiology. In the post PhD journey of 12 Years, he has guided UG, PG and PhD students in different relevant domains of Microbiology and Biotechnology. Till date he has contributed in various in 46 articles in Book Chapters, 51 articles in Peer Reviewed Journals and 01 patent (National). Right Now, his work has been appreciated as evidenced in Google scholar record of 2108 citations with H index 12 and i-10 index 13. During presenting his work in National and International conferences, he has been awarded twice with 2nd Prize (Speaker) in National level Platform. He has been recognized by a couple of prestigious editorial board as reviewer including 3-Biotech, Frontiers in Pharmacology etc. He has been serving as a member of American Society for Microbiology, Society for Conservation Biology (USA) etc.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Dr. Priyajit Banerjee serving as an Assistant Professor in the Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, West Bengal, India. He is involved in teaching advanced biotechnology courses such as Drug Discovery, Protein Engineering, Biophysical Chemistry, and API formulation etc. Dr. Banerjee's doctoral research at the UNESCO–Regional Centre for Biotechnology cantered on the structural and functional characterization of bacterial regulatory proteins. His work unraveled key mechanisms underlying motility-to-biofilm transitions in Pseudomonas aeruginosa and generated high-impact structural insights, including multiple Protein Data Bank depositions. He is recipient of international award such as David Blow Studentship Bursary, Carl Storm International Diversity Fellowship. He is also recipient of DST-SERB National Postdoctoral Fellowship. His lab currently focusing on Drug Discovery, Protein Engineering, and Mechanistic Toxicological Assessment of compounds integrating both computational and experimental approaches. His work exploring natural and synthetic bioactive molecules, engineers' proteins and enzymes with therapeutic relevance, and evaluates safety through toxicity profiling in biological models. Dr. Banerjee has contributed substantially to the field through publications in leading journals, including Science Advances, Molecular Aspects of Medicine, EBioMedicine, Frontiers in Immunology etc. Beyond research, he is deeply dedicated to teaching and mentorship, inspiring the next generation of life sciences students and researchers at Swami Vivekananda University to pursue transformative scientific discoveries.

Dr. Semanti Ghosh, currently working as Assistant Professor in the Department of Biotechnology, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata. Dr. Ghosh did her PhD in Biochemistry in 2018 from University of Kalyani in the field of Computational Biology. Then Dr. Ghosh joined Crystallography & Molecular Biology Division at Saha Institute of Nuclear Physics, Kolkata. As a postdoc. Dr. Ghosh received prestigious DBT Research Associateship fellowship of Govt. of India from July, 2018 to June, 2021. Dr. Ghosh worked in the field of protein-protein/DNA/ligand interactions and protein folding. After finishing postdoc, Dr. Ghosh joined in the Department of Biotechnology, Swami Vivekananda University as a faculty member since September, 2021. Her main research areas are Structural Biology & Bioinformatics: Protein structure function relationship during abiotic stress of rice plant, Gene expression study and computer-aided drug discovery against Dengue virus mediated fever, Molecular insight study and molecular regulation of neurodegenerative diseases and cancer biology. Dr. Ghosh has 20+ research articles in SCI international journals, contributed in 50+ book chapters. She presented her PhD and post doc works in several national and international conferences. Most of the publications are in peer reviewed and high impact journals like Molecular Biotechnology, Journal of Biomolecular Structure and Dynamics, International journal of biological macromolecules, PloS One, Proteins: Structure, function, Bioinformatics, Computational Biology and Chemistry under the renowned publication houses Elsevier, Springer, Willey. Presently 3 Ph.D. students working under her guidance and 2 students awarded in 2025 from the Department of Biotechnology, Swami Vivekananda University. Several Master students did their summer project and internship and completed their review papers or book chapters under her guidance.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Rupesh Dutta Banik is a faculty in the Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, India, with a specialization in Environmental Microbiology. His research focuses on microbial community profiling, heavy metal analysis in wastewater, and microbial bioremediation. With over three years of teaching experience, he is committed to research-driven education. He has authored and co-authored more than ten peer-reviewed journal articles and over twenty book chapters published by reputed publishers including Taylor & Francis and Springer Nature. He has actively presented his research at numerous national and international conferences, and is a contributing member of the American Society for Microbiology (ASM).

Dr. Aishwarya Guha, a cancer immunology researcher currently serving as Assistant Professor in the Department of Biotechnology at Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore. She completed Ph.D. in Cancer Immunology from Jadavpur University, where her research was focused on elucidating how tumor-educated platelets promote breast cancer progression by interacting with cancer stem cells and how it can be therapeutically modulated. Her research interests include tumor microenvironment, cancer stem cells, EMT, angiogenesis and translational oncology. Dr. Guha published extensively in reputed international journals, including Breast Cancer Research, Springer Nature, Frontiers in Immunology, Molecular Cancer Research etc. She is also the editor of the upcoming Springer Nature book "Platelet-Driven Oncogenesis: Crosstalk, Resistance and Therapeutic Targets" and serving as a reviewer for leading oncology journals like Scientific reports, Journal of experimental and clinical cancer research etc.

Priyanka Chakraborty, currently serving as an Assistant Professor in the Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences at Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore. She completed PhD in Life Science from Jadavpur University. Her research focuses on environmental microbiology, vermitechnology, and sustainable bioremediation, with particular emphasis on the detoxification and valorization of chromium- contaminated tannery sludge for safe agricultural applications. She has extensive experience in nanoparticle–microbe interactions, soil microbial ecology, and heavy-metal remediation. She actively involved in several DBT-funded research projects and have published many research articles in reputed international journals. Her interdisciplinary work integrates microbiology, nanotechnology, and soil science to develop innovative, eco-friendly, and sustainable solutions for environmental pollution management and resource recovery.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Chapter 1

Bioaccumulation of arsenic in tomato (*Solanum lycopersicum*): Pathways, toxicity, and implications

Riyanka Sarkar, Pritha Pal*

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal- 700121

**Corresponding Author's Email ID: prithap@svu.ac.in*

ABSTRACT

Arsenic (As), a poisonous metalloid ubiquitously distributed in the environment, is now a major public health issue because of its bioaccumulation in food crops, especially vegetables such as tomato (*Solanum lycopersicum*). Bioaccumulation of arsenic in edible plants has been widely researched in the past few years owing to its association with human health hazards, ecosystem degradation, and food security. Arsenic occurs primarily in two forms: arsenate (As(V)) and arsenite (As(III)), which can be taken up by plants via water and soil. Among various vegetables, tomato has drawn attention not only because of its nutritional value but also due to its vulnerability towards the uptake and accumulation of arsenic.

The arsenic presence in contaminated soil and irrigation water will directly impact its uptake by plant roots and subsequent transport to edible tissues. The degree of such bioaccumulation will be influenced by various factors such as the pH of the soil, redox status, organic content, and plant physiology. Arsenic will interfere with the uptake routes of essential nutrients such as phosphorus and generally cause oxidative stress and metabolic disturbance. Research has found that arsenic has a tendency to accumulate in roots in the majority of plants, but under some conditions, it is translocated to stems, leaves, and fruits- directly affecting consumers.

Several studies report that tomato plants, while less effective arsenic accumulators than certain hyperaccumulators, do take up measurable levels that exceed food safety standards when they are cultivated in arsenic-contaminated environments. Molecular analyses have shown that arsenic exposure impacts the expression of genes in the detoxification pathways, including those that code for glutathione, phytochelatins, and aquaporins. Such responses are crucial to the mechanism of tolerance of the plant but are unable to stop arsenic uptake into edible parts.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

In addition, arsenic pollution has been responsible for causing diseases such as skin lesions, cardiovascular disease, diabetes, and cancers in humans, especially in arsenic-endemic areas like the regions of India, Bangladesh, and China. This indicates the urgency to carry out research on arsenic mitigation measures and for safety awareness in consumption. Modern analytical methods like X-ray fluorescence, atomic absorption spectroscopy, and ICP-MS have enabled researchers to track arsenic content in different plant tissues, influencing policy and agricultural practice directions.

This review has as its goal to present an extensive yet humanized portrayal of arsenic entry into tomato plants, accumulation location, pathways, and the induced toxicological effects. We discuss the bioaccumulation within certain tissues, the quantitative reported levels in contemporary studies, and the health risks involved with this contamination. We also briefly address how molecular processes in the plant respond to arsenic stress and what these are pointing to in terms of crop safety and genetic modification opportunities. The final aim of consolidating this information is to create awareness for scientists, policymakers, and the public at large regarding the consequences of arsenic in the food supply, especially in one of the most eaten vegetables in the world.

Keywords: Arsenic bioaccumulation, *Solanum lycopersicum*, heavy metal toxicity, oxidative stress, phytochelatins, food safety

---

1. INTRODUCTION:

Tomato (*Solanum lycopersicum*), which is heavily grown and consumed around the world, is renowned for its high nutritional content, comprising vitamins, minerals, and antioxidants. It is a fundamental part of everyday diets in many countries, such as India, Bangladesh, China, and the United States (Meharg and Hartley-Whitaker, 2002; Zhang et al., 2021). Due to its widespread popularity and regular dietary consumption, any contamination of tomatoes can result in major public health issues. Among all contaminants, arsenic- a naturally occurring toxic metalloid- is one of the biggest threats.

Arsenic contamination in agriculture is mainly from anthropogenic sources like the application of arsenic-based pesticides, industrial effluents, and even more importantly, irrigation using arsenic-contaminated groundwater (Zhao et al., 2009; Tripathi et al., 2012). South and Southeast Asia are the regions most affected by groundwater containing arsenic concentrations

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

far exceeding the World Health Organization's (WHO) acceptable limit of 10 µg/L (Carbonell-Barrachina et al., 1998). This polluted water frequently enters agricultural systems and results in soil pollution and the buildup of arsenic in crops such as tomatoes (Srivastava et al., 2007).

The processes of arsenic uptake and accumulation in tomato plants are intricate. Arsenate (As V) has a similar structure to phosphate and frequently enters plant roots through phosphate transporters. Arsenite (As III), however, is more toxic and crosses the cell membrane into the cells via aquaporin channels (Abedin et al., 2002; Roychowdhury et al., 2002). Intracellularly, arsenic may disrupt normal cellular functions to produce oxidative stress, DNA damage, and disruption in growth and development. Its presence even in trace amounts in food parts is dangerous if ingested over a period of time.

A number of research works have proven that tomatoes cultured in arsenic-contaminated soils exhibit physiological and biochemical alterations. These comprise inhibited plant growth, less chlorophyll content, necrosis of the leaves, as well as disturbed enzyme function ((Heikens, 2006; Mondal and Majumder, 2010). On the molecular scale, stress-related gene expression, transporters, and detoxifying enzymes change considerably in reaction to arsenic contamination (Smith et al., 2000). This is a problem not only for plant health but also for safety of consumption by humans.

Also, long-term intake of arsenic-contaminated food has been associated with severe health problems. Long-term exposure to arsenic through food, even in trace amounts, can cause skin conditions, developmental impairment, cardiovascular diseases, neurotoxicity, and cancer risk (Islam et al., 2004). Areas already plagued by arsenic-contaminated groundwater- like the Gangetic belt in India and the Bengal Delta- suffer from a double whammy through drinking water and food exposure.

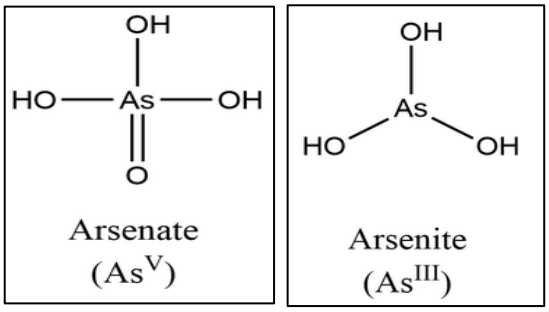
Thus, it is important to understand the bioaccumulation dynamics of arsenic in tomato plants in order to combat this international food safety issue. The purpose of this review article is to integrate current information on arsenic's pathways to tomatoes through the environment, its distribution between plant tissues, the degree of bioaccumulation, molecular and toxic effects, and associated health consequences. In this way, we hope to reveal potential mitigation factors, enhance public perception, and add strength to policymaking which protects agriculture and human health.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

2. ARSENIC BIOACCUMULATION IN TOMATO PLANTS, TISSUE-SPECIFIC:

Arsenic bioaccumulation in tomatoes is not uniform in all the plant structures. The roots, as they are directly exposed to arsenic-contaminated water and soil, are the major gatekeepers- absorbing most of the arsenic and being more willing to hold most of it there. Think of the roots as a natural filter, doing their best to keep this toxic element from reaching more vulnerable parts like stems, leaves, and fruits. But although some of the arsenic is carried upwards through the vascular system of the plant. The amount of arsenic that is transported to the aerial tissues depends on a plethora of factors: which tomato type, if the arsenic exists in its arsenite [As(III)] or arsenate [As(V)] form, and on environmental conditions such as soil pH and redox potential. These may cause arsenic to become mobilized or remain bound to the roots.

Inside the plant, there are specialized mechanisms that counteract the damage done by arsenic. The plant produces molecules called phytochelatins that bind arsenic and make it harmless and store it securely in vacuoles- tiny reservoirs inside the cells. This detoxification keeps arsenic's damage in check and prevents it from flowing unchecked within the plant.



Despite these defence mechanisms, under extremely polluted conditions arsenic levels have been reported to be as high as 4.2 mg/kg in leaves and up to 1.5 mg/kg in fruits. While these values could be considered insignificant, they find themselves exceeding limits recommended by food safety regulators and therefore are harmful to consumers' health. This is to highlight the importance of tracking and controlling arsenic contamination to make the tomatoes we end up consuming safe.

3. QUANTITATIVE BIOACCUMULATION AND INFLUENCING FACTORS:

Quantification of arsenic content in tomato tissues indicates how conditions affect the uptake. Generally, unadulterated tomatoes have insignificant amounts of arsenic (<0.1 mg/kg). When exposed to contaminated irrigation conditions, fruits have a maximum of 2.3 mg/kg arsenic (Chen et al., 2014). Bioaccumulation factor (BAF)- ratio of arsenic concentration in plant tissue to that in soil or water- varies from 0.05 to 0.8 depending on exposure and plant genotype.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Soil pH, organic matter, and availability of iron and aluminium oxides have a major impact on arsenic mobility and thus plant uptake. Arsenate is adsorbed more in neutral to alkaline soils and hence loses its availability. Arsenite, on the other hand, is more mobile and easily absorbed by roots of plants in anaerobic (flooded) situations (Mandal and Suzuki, 2002).

4. PATHWAY FROM SOIL AND WATER TO PLANT:

Arsenic enters tomato plants via contaminated soil and water. In the soil, arsenic predominantly occurs in the form of arsenate (As(V)) under aerobic conditions, which has a similar chemical structure to phosphate. Arsenate is absorbed by tomato plants via phosphate transporters in root cells since they incorrectly take up arsenate as phosphate. Inside the roots, most of the arsenic gets stuck there with only a fraction being distributed to the shoots and fruits (berries) of the tomato plant.

5. ARSENIC UPTAKE OCCURS THROUGH THE FOLLOWING PATHWAY:

Soil solution arsenate is taken up by phosphate transporters in the roots, displacing phosphate ions because of their chemical equivalence. Within plant roots, arsenate is enzymatically reduced to arsenite (As(III)), an intrinsically more mobile form in the plant. The bulk of the arsenic resides in root tissues, restricting arsenic movement to aerial portions. Part of the arsenic is transferred through the xylem to shoots and fruit, but within tomatoes, this transfer is comparatively low to roots. Phosphorus nutrition has an impact on arsenic uptake, Arsenate enters via phosphate transporters (PHT1 family); increased phosphorus can decrease arsenic uptake and restrict transfer to the edible portions, whereas arsenite enters via nodulin-26-like intrinsic proteins (NIPs), a subfamily of aquaporins (Smedley and Kinniburgh, 2002).

This route demonstrates the potential for arsenic soil contamination directly to impact tomato plants, particularly through the use of arsenic-contaminated water for irrigation. The primary environmental points of entry are the arsenate availability of the contaminated soil and the phosphate uptake systems of plant roots that unintentionally take in arsenic.

On its uptake, arsenic is either stored in the vacuoles of the roots, detoxified through thiol-rich peptide conjugation with phytochelatins, or transported in xylem to aerial organs. Translocation

occurs but is restricted. Environmental stress, nutrient starvation, and root to shoot communication determine this allocation.

6. TOXICITY AT MOLECULAR LEVEL AND HEALTH IMPLICATIONS:

Upon entry into the plant, arsenic perturbs cell redox homeostasis, leading to increased generation of ROS and oxidative modification of lipids, proteins, and DNA. The plant counteracts this by inducing antioxidant enzyme activity (SOD, CAT, APX) and chelator biosynthesis including glutathione (GSH) and phytochelatins (PCs).

At the gene level, stress-regulated genes such as those encoding metallothionein, transporters, and heat shock proteins are activated. Chloroplast function is damaged by chronic exposure, photosynthesis is inhibited, and nutrient transportation is affected. It has a direct correlation with fruit yield loss and quality decline.

In humans, intake of arsenic-contaminated tomatoes adds to cumulative arsenic burden. Chronic exposure, particularly in children and pregnant women, is linked with skin disease, irregular pigmentation, and keratosis (skin hardening and thickening) (Mandal and Suzuki, 2002). But below the surface, the destruction can be even worse. A great majority suffer from chronic respiratory diseases, peripheral neuropathy (nerve damage), fibrosis of the liver, and extreme rises in life-threatening cancers- particularly of the skin, lungs, bladder, kidneys, liver and developmental delay, neurological abnormalities. The pain is usually compounded by poverty, lack of access to healthcare, and a gradual loss of capacity to work or care for family.

Arsenic poisoning is a grave crisis in many parts of India, silently endangering the well-being and lives of millions- particularly those who rely on groundwater for drinking and irrigation. The worst-hit areas are the states of West Bengal, Bihar, Jharkhand, Uttar Pradesh, Assam, Manipur, and Chhattisgarh. In these states, districts bordering the Ganga and Brahmaputra river basins- Nadia, Murshidabad, Malda (West Bengal), Buxar, Bhojpur, Patna, Saran, Vaishali, and Begusarai (Bihar)- are known as arsenic hotspot (Smedley and Kinniburgh, 2002; Chakraborti et al., 2010). In these areas, natural geological processes and greater human intervention have resulted in risky amounts of arsenic percolating into aquifers, contaminating the water that people consume on a daily basis.

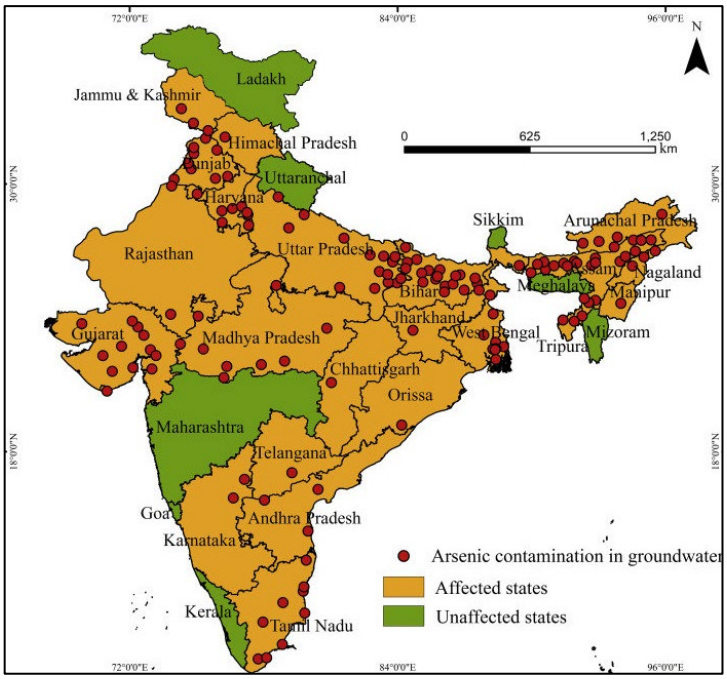
7. CONCLUSION:

Arsenic bioaccumulation in tomatoes is a critical concern that impacts crop quality and human health as well. The review puts into perspective how arsenic, mainly taken up through

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

contaminated water and soil via roots, may move into the palatable part of the plant- like the fruit we consume. While most of it remains in the roots, studies show that measurable amounts still migrate to stems, leaves, and tomatoes, making this a silent threat to our food chain.

Several factors such as the form of arsenic, soil properties, and plant's intrinsic genetic composition affect the uptake of arsenic. At the cellular level, arsenic causes extensive injury- preventing normal activities, triggering oxidative stress, and interfering with the detoxification process in the plant. Naturally, the intrinsic defence mechanisms in tomato plants are unable to completely exclude arsenic from the food chain.



This is a very serious issue where there is arsenic-contaminated groundwater and not many food safety regulations. Chronic consumption of such contaminated tomatoes can lead to serious health conditions like skin disease and even cancer.

There are, however, solutions. Alternative irrigation practices using safer soil amendments like iron oxides, planting arsenic-resistant or genetically improved cultivars of tomatoes, and awareness campaigns can significantly reduce the risk.

Briefly, arsenic in tomatoes is an intangible contaminant- but one that we can fix with the right combination of science, policy, and grass-roots activism. Keeping something as mundane as a tomato safe is essential to maintaining public health and public trust in what we eat.

REFERENCES:

Abedin, M. J., Cresser, M. S., Meharg, A. A., Feldmann, J., & Cotter-Howells, J. (2002). Arsenic accumulation and metabolism in rice (*Oryza sativa* L.). *Environmental Science & Technology*, 36(5), 962–968.

Carbonell-Barrachina, Á. A., Aarabi, M. A., Delaune, R. D., Gambrell, R. P., & Patrick, W. H. (1998). Arsenic chemistry in municipal sewage sludge as affected by redox potential and pH. *Water Research*, 32(2), 303–310.

Chakraborti, D., Rahman, M. M., Das, B., Murrill, M., Dey, S., Mukherjee, S. C., ... & Sengupta, M. K. (2010). Status of groundwater arsenic contamination in the state of West Bengal, India: A 20-year study report. *Molecular Nutrition & Food Research, 54*(11), 174–184.

Chen, Y., Han, Y. H., Cao, Y., Zhu, Y. G., Rathinasabapathi, B., & Ma, L. Q. (2014). Arsenic transport in rice and biological solutions to reduce arsenic risk from rice. *Frontiers in Plant Science*, 5, 1–7.

Heikens, A. (2006). Arsenic contamination of irrigation water, soil and crops in Bangladesh: Risk implications for sustainable agriculture and food safety. *FAO Report*, 39.

Islam, F. S., Gault, A. G., Boothman, C., Polya, D. A., Charnock, J. M., Chatterjee, D., & Lloyd, J. R. (2004). Role of metal-reducing bacteria in arsenic release from Bengal delta sediments. *Nature*, 430(6995), 68–71.

Li, R. Y., Ago, Y., Liu, W. J., Mitani, N., Feldmann, J., McGrath, S. P., & Ma, J. F. (2009). The rice aquaporin Lsi1 mediates uptake of arsenite. *Plant Physiology*, 150(4), 2071–2080.

Mandal, B. K., & Suzuki, K. T. (2002). Arsenic round the world: A review. *Talanta, 58*(1), 201–235. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0039-9140(02)00268-0

Meharg, A. A., & Hartley-Whitaker, J. (2002). Arsenic uptake and metabolism in arsenic resistant and nonresistant plant species. *New Phytologist*, 154(1), 29–43.

Mondal, P., & Majumder, C. B. (2010). Removal of arsenic from simulated groundwater using biosorbents. *Chemosphere*, 80(9), 1135–1141.

Roychowdhury, T., Uchino, T., Tokunaga, H., & Ando, M. (2002). Survey of arsenic in food composites from an arsenic-affected area of West Bengal, India. *Food and Chemical Toxicology*, 40(11), 1611–1621.

Sharma, I., & Sharma, V. (2015). Arsenic toxicity in plants: physiological, biochemical and molecular aspects. *BioMetals*, 28(5), 897–917.

Smedley, P. L., & Kinniburgh, D. G. (2002). A review of the source, behaviour and distribution of arsenic in natural waters. *Applied Geochemistry, 17*(5), 517–568. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0883-2927(02)00018-5

Smith, A. H., Lingas, E. O., & Rahman, M. (2000). Contamination of drinking-water by arsenic in Bangladesh: a public health emergency. *Bulletin of the World Health Organization*, 78(9), 1093–1103.

Srivastava, S., Mishra, S., Tripathi, R. D., Dwivedi, S., & Gupta, D. K. (2007). Copper-induced oxidative stress and responses of antioxidants and phytochelatins in *Hydrilla verticillata* (L.f.) Royle. *Aquatic Toxicology*, 80(4), 405–415.

Tripathi, P., Singh, P. C., Mishra, A., & Chauhan, P. S. (2012). Arsenic uptake and its toxicity in plants: a review. *International Journal of Environmental Sciences*, 3(3), 729–739.

Tripathi, R. D., Srivastava, S., Mishra, S., Singh, N., Tuli, R., Gupta, D. K., & Maathuis, F. J. M. (2007). Arsenic hazards: strategies for tolerance and remediation by plants. *Trends in Biotechnology*, 25(4), 158–165.

Zhang, J., Hamza, A., Xie, Z., Hussain, S., Brestic, M., Tahir, M. A., Ulhassan, Z., Yu, M., Allakhverdiev, S. I., & Shabala, S. (2021). Arsenic transport and interaction with plant metabolism: Clues for improving agricultural productivity and food safety. *Environmental Pollution*, *290*, 117987.

Zhao, F. J., Ma, J. F., Meharg, A. A., & McGrath, S. P. (2009). Arsenic uptake and metabolism in plants. *New Phytologist*, 181(4), 777–794.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Chapter 2

Smart drug delivery using PLGA Nanoparticles: A novel approach to MDR-TB treatment

Subarna Haldar[1], Megha Bag[2], Bidisha Ghosh[2], Subhasis Sarkar[1]*

[1] *Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal-700121*

[2] *Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, West Bengal, Kolkata- 700121*

**Corresponding Author's Email ID: subhasiss@svu.ac.in*

ABSTRACT

Multidrug-resistant tuberculosis (MDR-TB) driven by Mycobacterium tuberculosis strains remains a critical global threat due to its resistance to first-line drugs like Rifampicin, Isoniazid, Pyrazinamide, and Ethambutol. Conventional therapies are generally lengthy, toxic, and often ineffective, which leads to poor patient compliance and further resistance. Nanotechnology-based drug delivery systems, particularly those using polylactic-co-glycolic acid (PLGA), offer a promising alternative by addressing these limitations. PLGA nanoparticles are biodegradable, biocompatible, and capable of encapsulating anti-TB drugs like linezolid and rifampicin to improve drug stability, bioavailability, and site-specific delivery. These nanoparticles allow sustained drug release, reduced dosing frequency, and targeted pulmonary deposition when delivered via inhalation. Recent studies have demonstrated that optimized PLGA formulations exhibit desirable characteristics such as particle sizes below 300 nm, suitable aerodynamic diameters for lung targeting, high drug entrapment efficiency, and extended drug release over several days. Additionally, alginate-modified PLGA nanoparticles co-loaded with Moxifloxacin and Amikacin have demonstrated superior intracellular uptake and dual-drug release in macrophages, reducing bacterial burden more effectively than free or single-drug treatments. The alginate-entrapped formulation without calcium exhibited optimal size, uniformity, and macrophage targeting. While free drugs show higher potency in vitro, the nanoparticle system offers better stability, safety, and site-specific action in vivo. This review explores the entire mechanism of the PLGA–based drug delivery system and existing research findings that highlight PLGA-based nano-carriers as next-generation therapeutic platforms for both

pulmonary and extra-pulmonary MDR-TB, particularly through inhalable delivery systems that support shorter, safer, and more effective treatment regimens.

Keywords: Multidrug-resistant tuberculosis (MDR-TB), polylactic-co-glycolic acid (PLGA), Nanotechnology-based drug delivery systems, next-generation therapeutic platforms

---

1. INTRODUCTION:

With over 1.5 million deaths reported each year, tuberculosis (TB), which is caused by Mycobacterium tuberculosis, remains a major global public health concern (WHO, 2023). This problem has been made worse by the rise of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis (MDR-TB), which is characterised by resistance to at least isoniazid and rifampicin. Long-term high-dose regimens used in conventional MDR-TB treatments are frequently linked to poor patient adherence, systemic toxicity, and less-than-ideal therapeutic results. (Ghitman et al., 2020). Drug delivery systems based on nanotechnology provide creative answers to these problems. Because of their biocompatibility, biodegradability, controlled drug release, and capacity to target intracellular pathogens, poly (lactic-co-glycolic acid) (PLGA) nanoparticles stand out among other nanocarriers. With improved efficacy against MDR-TB, recent developments have expanded PLGA platforms to include alginate-entrapped PLGA nanoparticles, Amikacin Moxifloxacin-loaded PLGA, and inhalable Linezolid-loaded PLGA nanoparticles. This review summarises recent developments in PLGA-based drug delivery for MDR-TB, focusing on advanced formulations, mechanisms, challenges, and prospects.

2. PLGA AS A DRUG DELIVERY PLATFORM:

2.1 Chemical and Physical Properties:

PLGA is a biodegradable copolymer made from lactic acid and glycolic acid. By adjusting the lactic-to-glycolic ratio and molecular weight, its physicochemical characteristics, such as degradation rate, hydrophilicity, and mechanical strength, can be improved. PLGA is safe for use in biomedical applications because it breaks down into lactic and glycolic acid, which are naturally metabolised. These monomers are naturally occurring and are utilised by the body via the citric acid cycle. The molecular weight of PLGA directly affects nanoparticle features such as size, encapsulation capacity, release profile, and biocompatibility. Given its intrinsic properties, PLGA is a common choice for use as a nanoparticle matrix. PLGA is synthesised using a variety of lactic acid and glycolic acid combinations during the polymerisation process,

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

allowing for the production of polymers with varying molecular weights and physicochemical properties (Makadia and Siegel, 2011). PLGA is used to deliver pharmacological substances and in biological applications because it has low systemic toxicity (Ding and Zhu, 2018). Both the United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and the European Medicines Agency (EMA) have approved PLGA for use in a variety of human-use medication delivery systems (Ding and Zhu, 2018). PLGA nanoparticles are internalised using two basic mechanisms: pinocytosis and clathrin-mediated endocytosis. After internalisation, the nanoparticles dodge lysosomal breakdown and enter the cytoplasm within 10 minutes of exposure. This allows for contact with the vesicle membrane, resulting in membrane instability and release into the cytosol. PLGA-based nanoparticles are hydrophobic molecules that are identified as foreign compounds. The reticuloendothelial system (RES) is responsible for the distribution of these particles from the blood to the liver and spleen. This process represents a significant limitation of PLGA-based nanoparticles for controlled drug delivery systems. This limitation can be addressed by modifying the surface of PLGA nanoparticles in a way that prevents them from being recognised by the reticuloendothelial system (RES) (Ding and Zhu, 2018).

2.2 Advantages of PLGA Nanoparticles:

a. Biodegradable and Biocompatible- Degrades into non-toxic metabolites (Makadia HK, Siegel, 2011)
b. Controlled and Sustained Drug Release- Reduces dosage frequency (Ahmad et al., 2005)
c. Enhanced Drug Stability-Protects labile anti-TB drugs (Sharma et al., 2004)
d. Intracellular Targeting- Facilitates delivery to alveolar macrophages (Abdelghany et al., 2019)
e. Versatility- Can be combined with other polymers like alginate or modified for inhalation delivery.

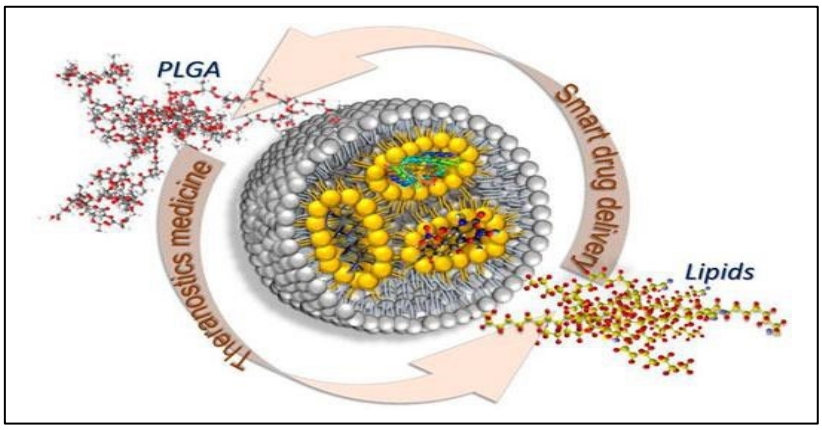


Figure 1: *PLGA-lipid hybrid nanocarriers. (Ghitman et al., 2020)*

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

2.3 PLGA Nanoparticle Formulation Techniques:

i. Emulsion-Solvent Evaporation
ii. Nanoprecipitation
iii. Spray-Drying
iv. Microfluidic
v. Alginate-Entrapped PLGA
vi. Spray-dried Inhalable Nanoparticles (Lagreca et al., 2020)

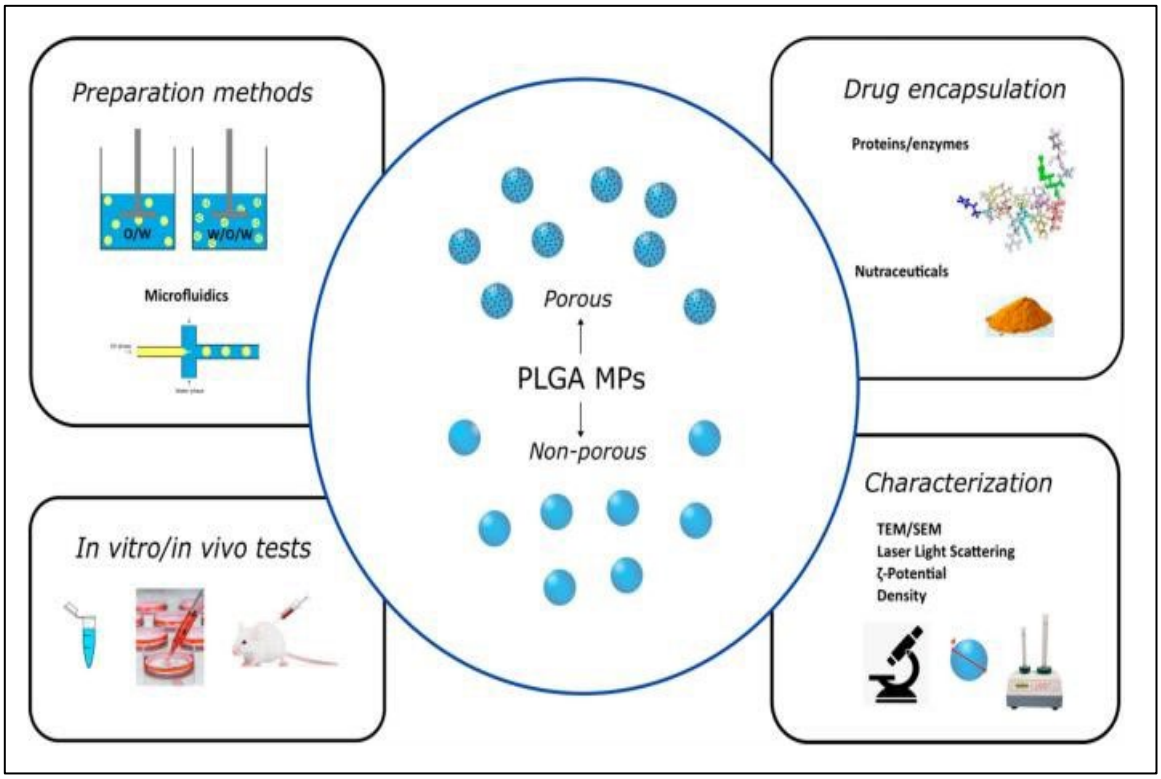


Figure 2: *Formulation techniques of PLGA microparticles (Lagreca et al., 2020).*

3. MECHANISMS OF PLGA-BASED DRUG DELIVERY:

PLGA nanoparticles enhance drug delivery through cellular uptake and controlled release:

3.1 Cellular Uptake:

Drugs are delivered into cells by PLGA nanoparticles via endocytosis, a process in which cells take up the particles. Following uptake, they are usually located in intracellular spaces such as endosomes, where the drug is gradually released through their degradation. Cell type, surface characteristics, and nanoparticle size are some of the variables that affect this process's efficiency (Ding and Zhu, 2018).

Table 1: Comparison of PLGA Nanoparticle Formulation Techniques

Method	**Particle Size** (nm)	**Encapsulation Efficiency** (%)	**Advantages**	**Limitations**
Emulsion-Solvent Evaporation	100-500	60-90	Simple, scalable	Solvent residues possible
Nanoprecipitation	50-300	40-80	High reproducibility	Limited drug loading
Spray-Drying	200-800	50-85	Suitable for heat-stable drugs	Heat-sensitive drugs limited
Microfluidic	50-200	70-95	Precise size control	Expensive, low throughput
Alginate-Entrapped PLGA	150-300	75-95	Enhanced macrophage targeting	Slightly complex preparation
Inhalable PLGA	150-400	80-92	Direct pulmonary delivery	Requires aerodynamic optimisation

*% Entrapment Efficiency = [(Total amount of drug – Amount of drug in supernatant)/Total amount of drug]*100*

3.2 Drug Release Mechanisms:

It is a complex process primarily governed by the mechanisms of diffusion, erosion, and swelling. Initially, drugs are released via diffusion through the polymer matrix and pores, and a phenomenon called "burst release" can occur due to high surface concentrations. As the PLGA polymer slowly erodes via hydrolysis into lactic and glycolic acid, new pores form and swell, facilitating further drug diffusion and release. The overall release rate can be customised by controlling factors like polymer properties, drug loading, and formulation (Ahmad et al. 2005).

PLGA-Based Formulations for MDR-TB*:*

3.2.1 Conventional Drug-Loaded PLGA Nanoparticles: Rifampicin and Isoniazid boost intracellular accumulation and bactericidal action. This combination medication reduces dose frequency and improves therapeutic efficacy in mouse tuberculosis models (Xie et al., 2020).

3.2.2 Alginate-Entrapped PLGA Nanoparticles:

Alginate-entrapped PLGA nanoparticles enhance encapsulation and target macrophages. (Ahmad et al.2005) Rifampicin and isoniazid in alginate-PLGA nanoparticles exhibited higher intracellular retention, sustained release, and improved bactericidal activity. (Xie et al.2020).

3.2.3 Amikacin and Moxifloxacin-Loaded PLGA Nanoparticles:

Amikacin-PLGA enhances macrophage uptake, reduces nephrotoxicity and improves pharmacokinetics (Vieira et al., 2016). Moxifloxacin-PLGA sustains intracellular release and promotes prolonged antibacterial activity (Abdelghany et al., 2019).

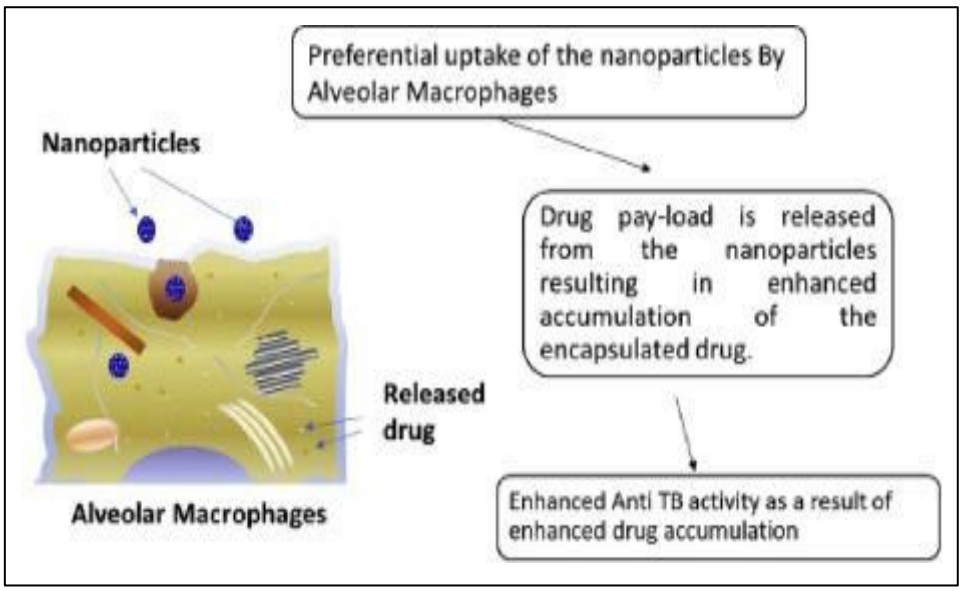


Figure 3: *Amikacin and Moxifloxacin loaded PLGA Nanoparticles for TB treatment (Abdelghany et al., 2019)*

3.2.3 Inhalable Linezolid-Loaded PLGA Nanoparticles:

Pulmonary delivery allows high local drug concentration, reduced systemic exposure, sustained release, and improved patient compliance (Patil et al., 2012). Preclinical studies show enhanced intracellular uptake, favourable pharmacokinetics, and significant antimicrobial activity (Sharma et al., 2018).

4. CHALLENGES AND LIMITATIONS:

PLGA-based nanocarriers offer many advantages, but several scientific, technical, and clinical challenges limit their seamless translation into real-world MDR-TB therapy. These challenges must be understood to guide future research and clinical development.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

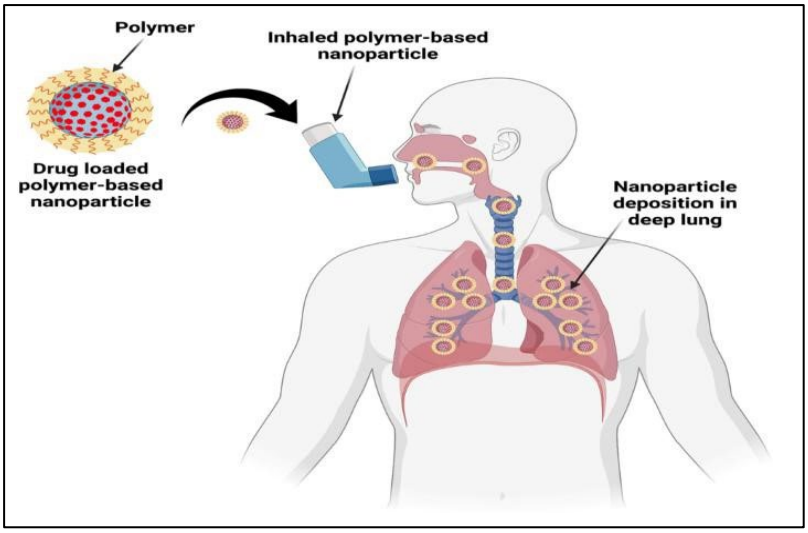


Figure 4: *Inhalable Linezolid-loaded PLGA nanoparticles for tuberculosis treatment (Kumar et al., 2023)*

Table 2. Summary of Advanced PLGA-Based MDR-TB Formulations

Drug(s) Encapsulated	**Particle Size**(nm)	**Encapsulation Efficiency** (%)	**In Vitro Effect**	**In Vivo Outcome**	**Reference**
Rifampicin	150-200	85	High intracellular killing	Prolonged release, improved PK	Xie et al.,2020
Isoniazid + Rifampicin	200-250	90	Sustained release	Enhanced macrophage targeting, improved efficacy	Singh et al.,2021
Linezolid (Inhalable PLGA)	200-400	85-95	Rapid macrophage uptake	High pulmonary drug deposition	Sunny et al.,2020
Amikacin	150-220	82	Intracellular bactericidal	Reduced nephrotoxicity, prolonged PK	Kumar et al.,2019
Moxifloxacin	160-230	80	Sustained killing	Enhanced intracellular drug concentration	Singh et al.,2021

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

5. SCALE-UP AND MANUFACTURING CHALLENGES:

While PLGA nanoparticles can be produced easily at a laboratory scale, manufacturing them in large, industrial quantities is difficult. MDR-TB treatment requires consistent dosage and large batches, and achieving this with PLGA is complicated due to batch-to-batch variability-small changes in mixing speed, temperature, or solvent evaporation can change particle size, drug loading, and release rate. Industrial-level equipment, such as micro-fluidisers and nano spray dryers are expensive. Ensuring sterility, uniformity, and stability becomes challenging as the production volume increases. These issues slow down commercialisation and regulatory approval.

5.1 Stability issues during storage:

PLGA nanoparticles can be chemically or physically unstable during long-term storage. They may clump together, affecting size and drug release. PLGA slowly absorbs moisture and begins degrading, leading to premature drug release. Many formulations must be stored under controlled conditions or even frozen. For inhalable formulations (like linezolid PLGA), controlling aerodynamic stability is an additional challenge. Unstable formulations cannot be reliably used for long-term treatment of MDR-TB.

5.2 Limited Drug Loading for Hydrophilic Drugs:

Many anti-TB drugs, such as amikacin, are hydrophilic (water-loving). PLGA is hydrophobic (water-repelling). So, hydrophilic drugs do not get encapsulated efficiently. They may leak out during nanoparticle formation. Encapsulation efficiency may remain low unless combined with other polymers (e.g., alginate). Low drug loading means higher doses are required, increasing toxicity or cost.

5.3 ***Potential Cytotoxicity and Immunogenicity*****:**

Despite being biocompatible, PLGA nanoparticles may produce an inflammatory response in the lungs when inhaled. High doses produce cytotoxicity, macrophage buildup, cell stress, and acidic byproducts during breakdown (lactic and glycolic acid), all of which can irritate tissues. Surface-modified or ligand-coated nanoparticles may provide additional toxicity hazards. Therefore, thorough toxicity investigations are essential before clinical translation.

5.4 Challenges with Pulmonary Delivery (Inhalable Formulations):

Inhalable PLGA nanoparticles (like linezolid-loaded formulations) must meet strict aerodynamic requirements, correct particle size for deep lung deposition (1–5 μm after spray-drying), avoiding deposition in the throat or being exhaled, preventing macrophages from clearing particles too quickly, ensuring stability after spray drying and achieving both nano-size for delivery and micro-size for inhalation is technically difficult. That optimize particle behaviour in the respiratory tract remains a major barrier.

5.5 Drug Release Kinetics Not Always Predictable:

PLGA degradation and drug release depend on polymer composition, crystallinity, particle size, storage conditions and surface coatings (like alginate). This makes drug release less predictable, especially for multi-drug systems. This unpredictable release can lead to underdosing or overdose.

5.6 Difficulty Achieving Targeted Delivery in TB Lesions:

Although PLGA nanoparticles are taken up by macrophages, TB infection sites are located in granulomas, necrotic lung cavities, hypoxic environments and dense fibrotic tissues. Reaching these regions is difficult because the blood supply is reduced, macrophage movement is limited, and nanoparticles cannot penetrate fibrotic tissue easily. Even effective formulations may not reach deep TB lesions.

5.7 Regulatory Barriers:

PLGA is FDA-approved, but PLGA nanoparticles are not. Regulators require extensive toxicity studies, high-cost clinical trials, long-term stability data and clear proof of safety for pulmonary use. Nanomedicine regulations are still evolving, making approval unpredictable. It slows down the path to clinical use.

6. FUTURE PERSPECTIVES:

Future development of PLGA-based drug delivery systems for MDR-TB is expected to focus on creating smarter, more targeted, and patient-friendly therapies. Advanced techniques, such as ligand-modified PLGA nanoparticles, inhalable dry-powder formulations, and stimuli-responsive carriers, have the potential to greatly increase drug delivery to alveolar macrophages that harbour Mycobacterium tuberculosis. Combining PLGA with natural polymers such as alginate or chitosan may improve drug stability, loading efficiency, and long-term release. Furthermore, utilising PLGA nanoparticles to co-deliver various anti-TB medications, particularly newer agents such as bedaquiline or delamanid, may assist in overcoming

resistance and minimising treatment duration. Future studies will incorporate machine learning and computational modelling to improve particle design and predict therapeutic outcomes. Finally, clinical translation, large-scale manufacturing, and regulatory approval will decide the real-world impact of PLGA-based nanomedicine, opening the door to safer, more effective, and shorter MDR-TB treatment regimens.

7. CONCLUSION:

PLGA-based drug delivery systems are an effective and versatile platform for enhancing treatment results for multidrug-resistant tuberculosis (MDR-TB). Their biodegradability, biocompatibility, and ability to offer prolonged and regulated release make them ideal for delivering anti-TB medications directly to infected macrophages. Recent advances, such as alginate-entrapped PLGA carriers, inhalable PLGA nanoparticle formulations, and drug co-encapsulation with amikacin, moxifloxacin, and linezolid, have resulted in considerable increases in drug stability, intracellular absorption, and antibacterial activity. These new technologies improve therapeutic concentrations in lung regions while significantly lowering systemic toxicity and dose frequency. These findings emphasise the significant potential of PLGA nanotechnology to solve the limitations of current anti-TB therapy.

However, despite promising laboratory and preclinical results, several challenges remain before PLGA-based formulations can be widely in clinical practice. Large-scale manufacturing, reproducibility, long-term safety, and regulatory approval require extensive validation through rigorous clinical trials. Additionally, the complexities of MDR-TB infections, patient variability, and drug resistance patterns demand optimised nanoparticle designs tailored for real-world settings. Continued interdisciplinary research—combining nanotechnology, microbiology, material science, and pulmonary drug delivery—is essential to translate these advances into accessible, affordable, and effective treatment options. Ultimately, PLGA-based drug delivery holds great promise for transforming MDR-TB therapy and improving global TB control, but its future success will depend on bridging the gap between experimental science and clinical application.

Conflict of Interest

Authors declare no competing interest.

REFERENCES:

Abdelghany S., Parumasivam T., Pang A., Roediger B., Tang P., Jahn K., et al. (2019). Alginate modified-PLGA nanoparticles entrapping amikacin and moxifloxacin as a novel host-directed therapy for multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. J. Drug Deliv. Sci. Technol. 52, 642–651. 10.1016/j.jddst.2019.05.025.

Ahmad Z, Pandey R, Sharma S, Khuller GK. Pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic behaviour of antitubercular drugs encapsulated in alginate nanoparticles. Int J Antimicrob Agents. 2006;28(2):155–161.

Bobo D., Robinson K. J., Islam J., Thurecht K. J., Corrie S. R. (2016). Nanoparticle-based medicines: A review of FDA-approved materials and clinical trials to date. Pharm. Res. 33 (10), 2373–2387. 10.1007/s11095-016-1958-5.

Chereddy K. K., Vandermeulen G., Préat V. (2016). PLGA based drug delivery systems: Promising carriers for wound healing activity. Wound Rep Reg 24 (2), 223–236. 10.1111/wrr.12404.

Ding D., Zhu Q. (2018). Recent advances of PLGA micro/nanoparticles for the delivery of biomacromolecular therapeutics. Mater. Sci. Eng. C 92, 1041–1060. 10.1016/j.msec.2017.12.036.

Ghitman J., Biru E. I., Stan R., Iovu H. (2020). Review of hybrid PLGA nanoparticles: Future of smart drug delivery and theranostics medicine. Mater. Des. 193, 108805. 10.1016/j.matdes.2020.108805.

Injectable formulations of poly(lactic acid) and its copolymers in clinical use. Adv. drug Deliv. Rev. 107, 213–227. 10.1016/j.addr.2016.07.002.

Kumar, M., Virmani, T., Kumar, G., Deshmukh, R., Sharma, A., Duarte, S., Brandão, P., & Fonte, P. (2023). Nanocarriers in Tuberculosis Treatment: Challenges and Delivery Strategies. *Pharmaceuticals*, *16*(10), 1360.

Kumar, P., Sharma, A., & Singh, R. (2019). Targeted PLGA-based nanocarriers for anti-tuberculosis therapy. *Journal of Drug Delivery Science and Technology*, *54*, 101287.

Makadia HK, Siegel SJ. (2011) Poly lactic-co-glycolic acid (PLGA) as biodegradable controlled drug delivery carrier. Polymers (Basel). 2011;3(3):1377–1397.

Shah, S., Cristopher, D., Sharma, S., Soniwala, M., & Chavda, J. (2020). Inhalable linezolid-loaded PLGA nanoparticles for treatment of tuberculosis: Design, development and in vitro evaluation. *Journal of Drug Delivery Science and Technology*, *60*, 102013.

Shao, L., Shen, S., & Liu, H. (2022). Recent advances in PLGA micro/nanoparticle delivery systems as a novel therapeutic approach for drug-resistant tuberculosis. *Frontiers in Bioengineering and Biotechnology*, *10*, 941077.

Sharma R, Saxena D, Dwivedi AK, et al. Inhalable linezolid-loaded PLGA nanoparticles for treatment of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis. Drug Delivery. 2018;25(1):181–191.

Singh, A., Gupta, R., & Patel, V. (2021). Advances in polymeric nanoparticles for tuberculosis treatment. Drug Delivery, 28(1), 1470–1485.

Vieira ACC, Chaves LL, Pinheiro M, et al. PLGA nanoparticles for delivery of aminoglycoside antibiotics. Eur J Pharm Sci. 2016;93:160–170.

WHO. (2023). Global tuberculosis report 2023. Geneva: WHO.

Xie, S., Li, J., & Zhao, M. (2020). Poly(lactic-co-glycolic acid) nanoparticles for the treatment of multidrug-resistant tuberculosis: In vitro and in vivo evaluation. *International Journal of Pharmaceutics, 582*, 119320.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Chapter 3

Designing an Integrated Multi-Omics Bioinformatics Pipeline to Identify Biomarkers of Brain Insulin Resistance in Down Syndrome Mouse Models

Debabrata Paria[1], Saswata Roy[2], Trisha Dutta Banik[1], Palash Kumar Pal[1], Debjit De[1], Priyankar Pal[1], Debaprasad Koner[1], Rupesh Dutta Banik[2], Samudra Pal[1]*

[1]*Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University*

[2]*Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University*

**Corresponding Author's Email ID: iamsamudra94@gmail.com*

ABSTRACT

Down syndrome (DS), caused by trisomy of human chromosome 21, is intrinsically linked to an extraordinarily high lifetime risk of early-onset Alzheimers disease (AD). A critical prodromal feature of this neurodegeneration is the development of brain insulin resistance, characterized by impaired insulin signalling, neuroinflammation, and metabolic dysregulation long before the onset of overt cognitive decline or classical amyloid pathology. To unravel the complex molecular underpinnings connecting trisomy 21 to brain insulin signalling deficits and AD neuropathology, researchers increasingly rely on established DS mouse models, such as Ts65Dn, Ts1Cje, and Dp(16)1Yey. Despite their utility, single-omics investigations often fail to capture the multi-dimensional nature of these complex physiological changes. Instead, integrating disparate layers of biological information spanning gene expression (transcriptomics), metabolic perturbations (metabolomics), and signalling cascades mediated by extracellular vesicles (proteomics) offers a more holistic systems-level perspective. However, designing and implementing a robust computational framework to harmonize these heterogeneous data remains a significant challenge. This review outlines a comprehensive methodological strategy for constructing an integrated multi-omics bioinformatics pipeline tailored to brain insulin resistance and early AD risk in DS mouse models. We systematically detail the workflow for processing RNA-seq, non-targeted metabolomics (LC-MS/GC-MS), and extracellular vesicle proteomics data. Emphasizing computational logic rather than wet-lab protocols, we discuss data acquisition, quality control, differential analysis, and normalization techniques specific to each omics layer. Furthermore, we explore advanced multi-omics

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

integration strategies, including network biology, correlation matrices, and machine learning dimensionality reduction techniques like MOFA and mixOmics. Finally, this review highlights methods for identifying hub genes, pathway enrichment, and generating publication-ready visualizations, while addressing current computational limitations and future spatial and single-cell perspectives.

Keywords: Down syndrome, brain insulin resistance, multi-omics, bioinformatics pipeline, transcriptomics, metabolomics, extracellular vesicle proteomics, Alzheimer's disease

---

1. INTRODUCTION:

Down syndrome (DS) is the most common genetic cause of intellectual disability, resulting from triplication of all or part of human chromosome 21 (Hsa21). In addition to developmental and systemic consequences, individuals with DS have a highly elevated risk of developing early-onset Alzheimers disease (AD-DS), with neuropathological hallmarks such as amyloid-beta (Aβ) plaques and neurofibrillary tangles often appearing by their late thirties (Wiseman et al., 2015; Antonarakis et al., 2020). However, the molecular antecedents driving this accelerated aging and neurodegeneration begin much earlier. Accumulating evidence points toward brain insulin resistance as a critical bridging pathology between DS and AD (Perluigi et al., 2014).

Brain insulin signalling is vital for neuronal survival, synaptic plasticity, learning, and memory (De Felice et al., 2014). In DS and sporadic AD, central insulin resistance manifests as reduced responsiveness of the insulin receptor (IR) and its downstream effectors, notably the IRS-1/PI3K/AKT signalling cascade. This impairment exacerbates neuroinflammation, disrupts glucose metabolic networks, and promotes both Aβ accumulation and tau hyperphosphorylation (Tramutola et al., 2020). To mechanistically interrogate these pathways, researchers frequently deploy DS mouse models predominantly the Ts65Dn, Ts2Cje, and Dp(16)1Yey strains which exhibit segmental trisomies orthologous to Hsa21 and recapitulate key phenotypic, cognitive, and metabolic features of human DS (Herault et al., 2017).

While traditional molecular biology has yielded significant insights into single genes or specific signalling cascades, the complexity of brain insulin resistance necessitates a broader view. The advent of high-throughput omics technologies has enabled the interrogation of global biological states. Yet, single-layer omics studies whether mapping transcript expression changes via RNA-seq, characterizing altered energy substrates via metabolomics, or

identifying signalling proteins through mass spectrometry provide an incomplete picture of the overall biological dysregulation (Hasin et al., 2017). Consequently, the integration of multiple omics modalities has emerged as a crucial bioinformatic paradigm for deciphering the synergistic molecular cascades characterizing AD-DS pathogenesis.

This review provides a methodological blueprint for computational biologists, bioinformaticians, and neuroscientists seeking to design an integrated in silico workflow to study brain insulin resistance in DS models. While avoiding wet-lab procedural specifics, this article delineates a detailed bioinformatics strategy for processing and integrating bulk tissue RNA-seq, mass spectrometry-based metabolomics, and extracellular vesicle (EV) proteomics. By harmonizing these disparate datasets, researchers can construct robust multi-layer networks to identify novel hub genes, track metabolic pathway rewiring, and ultimately discover reliable multi-omics biomarkers of early neurodegenerative risk.

2. RATIONALE FOR MULTI-OMICS INTEGRATION:

Biological systems operate through highly coordinated, dynamic, and multi-layered molecular networks. The central dogma of molecular biology dictates a linear flow of information from DNA to RNA to protein; however, biological realities involve extreme non-linear regulatory feedback, post-translational modifications, epigenetic influences, and metabolic fluxes that dictate phenotypic responses (Haas et al., 2017). Investigating brain insulin resistance in a trisomic context strictly from a transcriptomic viewpoint ignores the reality that mRNA abundance does not strictly correlate with protein levels, nor does it necessarily inform on the active metabolic state of the cell.

2.1 The Systems Biology Perspective:

From a systems biology perspective, multi-omics integration views the cell as an interconnected holistic entity. By simultaneously mapping the transcriptome, proteome, and metabolome, researchers capture the interplay between the genome regulatory commands and the cell's actual functional state (Subramanian et al., 2020). In the context of the Ts65Dn mouse brain, an overexpressed kinase (transcriptome level) leading to aberrant phosphorylation of an insulin signaling intermediate in extracellular vesicles (proteome level), ultimately causing an accumulation of neurotoxic lipid species (metabolome level), represents a cascade that can only be elucidated via an integrated computational approach.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

2.2 Complementary Strengths of Selected Modalities:

In the proposed pipeline, combining RNA-seq, EV proteomics, and metabolomics serves distinct complementary purposes:

a) **RNA-seq Transcriptomics:** Provides a deep, unbiased snapshot of baseline gene expression and regulatory shifts across entire signalling networks (e.g., assessing the transcriptomic burden of the trisomic genes).

b) **Extracellular Vesicle (EV) Proteomics:** EVs are membrane-bound particles released by cells containing proteins, lipids, and nucleic acids indicative of their cellular origin. In neurological research, EVs cross the blood-brain barrier and mediate intercellular communication, rendering EV proteomics an excellent modality for identifying circulating, highly specific neuro-biomarkers reflecting real-time central insulin signalling states (Kapogiannis et al., 2019).

c) **Metabolomics:** Positioned as the ultimate downstream product of gene and protein activity, the metabolome provides the closest representation of the true physiological phenotype. Detecting shifts in energetic metabolites (e.g., glucose, ATP mapping, branched-chain amino acids) precisely defines the metabolic dysfunction inherent to brain insulin resistance (Puchalska and Crawford, 2017).

Computational integration of these distinct data types minimizes single-modality noise and false positives. If an alteration is concordantly observed across mRNA expression, protein translation, and downstream metabolic products, the probability of it being a biologically valid biomarker for neurodegeneration is exceedingly high.

3. DATA SOURCES AND INPUT FORMATS:

Designing an effective multi-omics pipeline fundamentally relies on a rigorous understanding of the various raw data inputs and their standardized computational formats. Multi-omics data present extensive heterogeneity in data structures, dimensionality, and technical noise profiles.

3.1 RNA-Seq Transcriptomics Data:

Raw RNA-seq data typically originate from Illumina sequencing platforms.

a) **FASTQ Files:** The foundational input is the FASTQ file, containing millions of short nucleotide sequences (reads) coupled with Phred quality scores indicating the accuracy of each base call (Cock et al., 2010). For researchers utilizing public data rather than

generating their own, FASTQ files are downloaded from the NCBI Sequence Read Archive (SRA) or the European Nucleotide Archive (ENA).

b) **Count Matrices:** Following alignment and summarization, transcriptomics data is represented as an m \times n digital gene expression count matrix, where m rows represent genes (e.g., Ensembl IDs) and n columns represent individual samples (e.g., Ts65Dn vs. Euploid control).

3.2 Metabolomics Spectral Files:

Non-targeted metabolomics profiling, conducted via Liquid Chromatography-Mass Spectrometry (LC-MS) or Gas Chromatography-Mass Spectrometry (GC-MS), generates highly complex, multi-dimensional data reflecting mass-to-charge ratios (m/z), retention times (RT), and ion intensities.

a) **Raw format conversions:** Instrument-specific proprietary formats (e.g., Thermo Fisher.RAW, Agilent.d) must first be converted into open-source standard XML-based formats to facilitate reproducible bioinformatic and statistical processing. The most widely adopted format is mzML, though mzXML is also historically common (Martens et al., 2011).

b) **Metabolite Abundance Tables:** After processing, the output is a quantitative feature table containing identified metabolites (or unknown m/z-RT pairs) and their normalized relative peak intensities across samples.

3.3 Extracellular Vesicle Proteomics Data:

Mass spectrometry-based proteomics of isolated EVs (utilizing techniques like Data-Dependent Acquisition, DDA, or Data-Independent Acquisition, DIA) generates millions of MS and MS/MS spectra.

a) **Raw MS Files:** Similar to metabolomics, these are typically high-resolution .RAW files.

b) **Protein Identification Tables:** Once computationally processed against a reference FASTA database (e.g., Mus musculus proteome), the resultant outputs are text-delimited files or structured tables (e.g., proteinGroups.txt from MaxQuant). These tables contain protein accession numbers (UniProt IDs), peptide sequences, sequence coverage statistics, and quantitative values such as Label-Free Quantification (LFQ) intensities (Cox et al., 2014).

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Understanding these input modalities is critical, as the preliminary stages of the bioinformatics pipeline involve transforming these raw, unstructured reads and spectra into unified, highly structured mathematical matrices that can be queried simultaneously.

4. RNA-SEQ BIOINFORMATICS PIPELINE:

The transcriptomic arm of the pipeline aims to identify differentially expressed genes (DEGs) that reflect the perturbed signaling underlying insulin resistance in the context of trisomy. Processing raw RNA-seq reads into biological insights requires a standardized sequence of well-characterized algorithms.

4.1 Data Retrieval and Quality Control:

When utilizing publicly available datasets (e.g., from NCBI SRA), data must first be downloaded. The SRA Toolkit is the standard tool for this process. Using the prefetch command followed by fasterq-dump, researchers can download and convert .sra files to paired-end FASTQ formats:

prefetch SRR12345678 fasterq-dump SRR12345678 --split-files

Once acquired, the raw reads must be subjected to stringent quality control (QC). FastQC generates comprehensive web-based reports detailing read quality scores (Phred scores), GC content, sequence duplication levels, and adapter contamination. For experiments with dozens of samples, MultiQC aggregates individual FastQC reports into a single interactive dashboard (Ewels et al., 2016).

4.2 Read Trimming and Filtering:

Raw reads often contain residual Illumina adapter sequences or low-quality terminal bases that can severely affect alignment efficiency. Tools like Trimmomatic (Bolger et al., 2014) or Cutadapt utilize rolling-window quality algorithms to trim or discard poor-quality reads:

trimmomatic PE -phred33 sample_R1.fq.gz sample_R2.fq.gz \ out_R1_paired.fq out_R1_unpaired.fq out_R2_paired.fq out_R2_unpaired.fq \ ILLUMINACLIP:TruSeq3-PE.fa:2:30:10 LEADING:3 TRAILING:3 SLIDINGWINDOW:4:15 MINLEN:36

4.3 Read Alignment:

High-quality reads are mapped to the reference genome (e.g., Mus musculus GRCm39) using splice-aware aligners capable of handling eukaryotic introns. STAR (Spliced Transcripts Alignment to a Reference) (Dobin et al., 2013) and HISAT2 (Kim et al., 2015) are state-of-

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

the-art aligners. STAR operates utilizing a maximal mappable seed strategy, making it extremely fast at the cost of higher RAM usage.

STAR --runThreadN 8 --genomeDir /path/to/genome_index \ --readFilesIn out_R1_paired.fq out_R2_paired.fq \ --outFileNamePrefix sample_aligned --outSAMtype BAM SortedByCoordinate

4.4 Transcript Quantification:

Following alignment, read counts for each genomic feature (e.g., exons, genes) are tabulated. featureCounts (from the Subread package) assigns aligned reads to genomic features annotated in a GTF/GFF file (Liao et al., 2014). Alternatively, alignment-free "pseudo-alignment" tools like Salmon (Patro et al., 2017) directly quantify transcript abundance from FASTQ files against a reference transcriptome, offering significant speed advantages and transcript-level resolution.

4.5 Normalization and Differential Expression Analysis:

Raw count data cannot be directly compared across samples due to variable sequencing depth and RNA composition effects. R/Bioconductor packages DESeq2 (Love et al., 2014) and edgeR (Robinson et al., 2010) are the industry standards for normalization and differential expression testing. They assume count data follows a negative binomial distribution. DESeq2 applies median-of-ratios normalization and shrinks gene-wise dispersion estimates to generate highly stringent empirical Bayes statistics. Differentially expressed genes between Ts65Dn and control models, defined by an adjusted p-value (FDR) < 0.05 and absolute $\log_2(\text{fold change}) > 1$, form the foundational dataset for downstream network integration.

4.6 Gene Set Enrichment Analysis (GSEA):

To contextualize DEGs biologically, Gene Set Enrichment Analysis (GSEA) evaluates whether predefined sets of genes (e.g., "Insulin Receptor Signalling Pathway" via Gene Ontology) show statistically significant, concordant differences between the DS models and controls (Subramanian et al., 2005). Tools like the clusterProfiler R package facilitate these analyses, providing a functional readout of the perturbed transcriptomic landscape.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

5. METABOLOMICS DATA PROCESSING:

While RNA-seq highlights regulatory capacity, metabolomics quantifies the final biochemical phenotype. Integrating untargeted metabolomics ensures that downstream perturbations such as altered branched-chain amino acid levels commonly seen in insulin resistance are captured.

5.1 Peak Detection and Alignment:

Raw mass spectrometry data (.mzML files) require intensive preprocessing. The standard open-source framework is XCMS (Smith et al., 2006) in R, or the Java-based GUI tool MZmine. The XCMS CentWave algorithm first detects chromatographic peaks (features) across m/z and retention time dimensions within individual samples. Following detection, features must be aligned across all samples to correct for minor retention time drifts common in chromatography. The objective is to construct a unified feature table (a matrix of samples by m/z-RT pairs containing peak intensity values).

5.2 Normalization and Scaling:

Systematic biases introduced during sample preparation or mass spectrometer fluctuation necessitate normalization. Common techniques include normalization by total ion current (TIC), probabilistic quotient normalization (PQN), or using internal standards. Because highly abundant metabolites can statistically mask subtle changes in low-abundance energetic lipids, data scaling (e.g., Pareto scaling, autoscaling, or log transformation) is mandatory prior to multivariate statistical evaluation.

5.3 Metabolite Identification:

The critical bottleneck in untargeted LC-MS is translating an m/z-RT feature into a chemically identifiable metabolite. This requires matching the experimental m/z and MS/MS fragmentation spectra against spectral databases such as the Human Metabolome Database (HMDB) (Wishart et al., 2018), METLIN, or the Kyoto Encyclopedia of Genes and Genomes (KEGG). Computational tools often return multiple putative identifications per feature based on mass tolerance (e.g., \Delta ppm < 5), thus requiring careful manual or algorithmic curation based on isotopic patterns and pathway probability.

5.4 Statistical Analysis and Pathway Mapping:

Differentially abundant metabolites are identified utilizing both univariate (e.g., Students t-tests, Mann-Whitney U test, ANOVA) and multivariate methods (e.g., Principal Component Analysis [PCA], Partial Least Squares Discriminant Analysis [PLS-DA]). The web-based

suite MetaboAnalyst (Pang et al., 2021) offers a comprehensive interface for conducting these analyses and mapping the significant metabolites to annotated KEGG pathways (e.g., TCA cycle, glycolysis/gluconeogenesis) to determine localized metabolic pathway dysregulation correlated with insulin resistance.

6. EXTRACELLULAR VESICLE PROTEOMICS PIPELINE:

Extracellular vesicles (EVs), including exosomes and microvesicles, encapsulate distinct protein signatures that mirror intracellular states. In the context of AD-DS, EV proteomics from brain tissue or isolated biofluids is uniquely positioned to identify signaling biomarkers like IRS-1 phosphorylation status.

6.1 Mass Spectrometry Data Processing:

The bioinformatic processing of tandem mass spectra (MS/MS) requires robust search engines. MaxQuant (Cox and Mann, 2008) is the most prominent computational platform for high-resolution MS data. MaxQuant relies on the Andromeda search engine to match experimental MS/MS spectra against theoretical spectra generated by in silico digestion of a FASTA protein database.

6.2 Peptide Identification and Protein Inference:

To identify peptides, parameters including specific protease cleavage rules (e.g., Trypsin), fixed modifications (e.g., Carbamidomethylation of cysteine), and variable modifications (e.g., Oxidation of methionine, Phosphorylation of Ser/Thr/Tyrcritical for insulin signaling studies) must be defined. Because peptides can map to multiple homologous proteins, the "protein inference problem" is addressed using algorithms that assemble peptides into protein groups based on the principle of parsimony. False Discovery Rates (FDR) map probabilities, typically set to 1%, stringently controlling false positive identifications via a target-decoy database search strategy.

6.3 Quantification and Differential Expression:

In label-free proteomics, relative protein abundance is calculated using the MaxLFQ algorithm within MaxQuant, which extracts maximum information from peptide intensity profiles over retention time (Cox et al., 2014). For downstream statistical analysis, the Perseus platform is routinely used in conjunction with MaxQuant (Tyanova et al., 2016). Data processing steps in Perseus involve:

a) Log2 transforming LFQ intensities.

b) Filtering out reverse database hits and potential clinical contaminants.

c) Imputing missing valuesa common challenge in Data-Dependent MSoften drawing from a normal distribution simulating the lower limit of instrument detection.

d) Performing two-sample t-tests to identify differentially expressed EV proteins between DS and control cohorts.

6.4 Functional Proteomics Networks:

Differentially expressed EV proteins are subsequently mapped onto functional interaction networks using databases like STRING (Szklarczyk et al., 2019). The STRING database integrates known and predicted protein-protein interactions (PPI) derived from genomic context, high-throughput experiments, co-expression, and literature mining. A PPI map specifically filtering for nodes associated with the PI3K-AKT signalling pathway provides the requisite interactome topology to later merge with transcriptomic and metabolomic layers.

7. MULTI-OMICS INTEGRATION STRATEGIES:

The core challenge of this pipeline is harmonizing data matrices of differing scales, distributions, and biological proximities (e.g., transcripts vs. metabolites). Multi-omics integration can generally be classified into early, intermediate, and late integration strategies. For investigating brain insulin resistance, intermediate (data transformation and joint dimensionality reduction) and late (network-based) integrations are most biologically interpretable.

7.1 Correlation-Based Analysis and Late Integration:

Late integration involves analysing each omics layer independently and then overlapping the significant findings. This is often performed through multi-block correlation analyses. For instance, calculating Spearman or Pearson correlation coefficients between the LFQ intensities of a phosphorylated IRS-1 protein in EVs and the peak intensities of specific glycolytic intermediates. While straightforward, this approach scales poorly with high-dimensional data and often suffers from severe multiple-testing burdens.

7.2 Dimensionality Reduction and Latent Variable Models:

To uncover hidden biological signatures driving the AD-DS phenotype, early and intermediate integrations leverage machine learning. The mixOmics R package (Rohart et al., 2017) provides powerful multivariate methodologies. Its core algorithm, DIABLO (Data Integration Analysis for Biomarker discovery using Latent cOmponents), extends Partial Least Squares

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Discriminant Analysis (PLS-DA) to multiple blocks. DIABLO identifies a highly correlated multi-omics signature latent component comprised of a minimal set of transcripts, proteins, and metabolites that optimally discriminates between the Ts65Dn genotype and controls based on their brain insulin resistance status.

Similarly, Multi-Omics Factor Analysis (MOFA) utilizes a probabilistic graphical model to infer principal sources of variance (latent factors) across disparate omics modalities (Argelaguet et al., 2018). In an AD-DS model, MOFA might extract a specific "Insulin Signalling Factor" where variance is jointly driven by diminished Glut4 mRNA expression, reduced AKT protein abundance, and elevated brain glucose levels, thereby highlighting the synergistic dysregulation.

7.3 Multi-Layer Network Mapping:

Alternatively, network-based integration directly constructs a composite biological graph. Tools like OmicsNet (Zhou et al., 2022) allow researchers to input lists of DEGs, differentially abundant EV proteins, and altered metabolites. The algorithm queries comprehensive interaction databases (e.g., InAct, KEGG) to build a heterogeneous 3D network connecting gene regulatory logic to protein interaction cascades and metabolic substrate flows, facilitating the topological identification of systemic pinch points.

8. NETWORK ANALYSIS AND HUB GENE IDENTIFICATION:

Once a multi-omics network is constructed, the overarching goal shifts from identifying individual altered features to uncovering the 'master regulators' or 'hub genes' governing the dysfunctional module. In network theory, biological networks are scale-free, meaning a few highly connected nodes (hubs) exert disproportionate influence over the system's integrity.

8.1 Topological Network Analysis:

Network topology is analysed using graph theory metrics. The Cytoscape software environment is the gold standard for this task (Shannon et al., 2003). By calculating fundamental metrics such as Degree Centrality (number of direct connections a node has) and Betweenness Centrality (the frequency with which a node acts as a bridge along the shortest path between two other nodes) researchers pinpoint the network's structural vulnerabilities. In the context of AD-DS, a protein with high betweenness centrality bridging the neuroinflammatory module to the PI3K-AKT module represents an ideal therapeutic target.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

8.2 Modules and Clustering:

Instead of looking at the entire network, researchers often search for dense sub-networks, or functional modules, that correspond to specific physiological processes (e.g., mitochondrial dysfunction or synaptic vesicle docking). MCODE (Molecular Complex Detection) is a highly utilized Cytoscape plugin that clusters interconnected nodes based on graph-theoretic density parameters (Bader and Hogue, 2003).

Additionally, if utilizing transcriptomic data directly, Weighted Gene Co-expression Network Analysis (WGCNA) identifies clusters (modules) of highly co-expressed genes (Langfelder & Horvath, 2008). By correlating these modules with external phenotypic traits such as biochemical measures of brain insulin resistance (e.g., HOMA-IR indices applied to brain tissue extracts), WGCNA can isolate the specific gene networks driving the AD-DS metabolic phenotype independently of predefined pathway annotations.

9. PATHWAY ENRICHMENT ANALYSIS:

To interpret the biological meaning embedded within lists of DEGs, significant proteins, and metabolites, researchers perform enrichment analysis. This approach transitions the data from a feature-level interpretation to a functional-level insight.

9.1 Gene Ontology (GO) and Kyoto Encyclopedia of Genes and Genomes (KEGG):

The clusterProfiler package in R provides a streamlined framework for functional enrichment (Wu et al., 2021).

a) **GO Enrichment:** Maps entities to biological processes (BP), cellular components (CC), and molecular functions (MF). This highlight generalized functional shifts, such as perturbations in "synaptic transmission" or "tyrosine kinase signalling."

b) **KEGG Pathway Analysis:** Maps entities to curated biochemical pathways. Multi-omics integration platforms can perform joint KEGG mapping, querying both transcript/protein IDs and metabolite KEGG IDs against the exact same pathway map, visually overlaying which segments of the Insulin Signalling Pathway (mmu04910) or Alzheimer's disease (mmu05010) are perturbed at the genetic versus metabolic level.

9.2 Reactome and Disease Ontology:

The Reactome database offers a highly granular, peer-reviewed hierarchy of biological pathways with specific reactions. For translational research in DS mouse models, analysing Disease Ontology (DO) enrichment via the DOSE package (Yu et al., 2015) mathematically

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

confirms the dataset's relevance to specific human pathologies (e.g., mapping mouse multi-omics signatures to human "tauopathy" or "type 3 diabetes" terminologies).

10. VISUALIZATION AND PUBLICATION-QUALITY FIGURES:

Transforming multi-dimensional statistical analyses into interpretable, publication-quality graphics is an essential component of the bioinformatics pipeline. The R graphics environment, driven predominantly by ggplot2 (Wickham, 2016), provides unparalleled flexibility.

10.1 Feature-Level Visualization:

To summarize the primary differential analysis outputs from DESeq2 or Perseus, Volcano Plots (plotting -\log_{10}(\text{adjusted } p\text{-value}) against \log_2(\text{fold change})) are ubiquitous. Packages like EnhancedVolcano allow for elegant labeling of top insulin-signaling candidates crossing significance thresholds. Principal Component Analysis (PCA) Plots, generated via ggplot2's autoplot function, are critical for visualizing sample variance, confirming that the largest axis of variation separates the Ts65Dn cohort from euploid controls.

10.2 Global Signature Visualization:

To display the broader dysregulated landscape, Heatmaps are generated utilizing the ComplexHeatmap package (Gu et al., 2016). ComplexHeatmap is particularly suited for multi-omics approaches, as it allows researchers to align multiple heatmaps horizontally for example, placing a transcript variance heatmap directly adjacent to a metabolite abundance heatmap for the same samples with dynamic side-annotations categorizing pathways horizontally.

10.3 Network and Pathway Visualization:

For multi-omics networks, Cytoscape remains the premier choice. Users map quantitative data (e.g., fold change, p-values) to visual attributes (e.g., node color, node size). A publication-ready multi-omics diagram might feature mRNA nodes as distinct shapes from protein nodes, colored in a divergent red-blue scale to indicate up/down-regulation of brain insulin resistance markers. Furthermore, specialized pathway enrichment visualizers like the enrichplot package generate dot plots, ridge plots, and circular cnetplots (Category Net Plots) to beautifully illustrate the complex overlap between enriched pathways and the specific genes or metabolites driving that enrichment.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

11. CASE STUDY EXAMPLE PIPELINE:

To concretize the proposed bioinformatics strategy, consider a hypothetical integrated experiment aiming to identify aberrant insulin signalling biomarkers in the frontal cortex of 6-month-old Ts65Dn mice versus euploid controls.

Phase 1: Single-Omics Processing

a) Transcriptomics: Bulk RNA-seq of cortical tissue is processed via STAR and DESeq2. The analysis reveals significant down-regulation of insulin signalling transcripts (Irs1, Pik3ca) and up-regulation of neuroinflammatory markers (Tnf, Il1b).

b) Metabolomics: Cortical homogenates analysed via LC-MS and processed using XCMS highlight a significant accumulation of neurotoxic branched-chain amino acids and a depletion of ATP, indicating energetic failure.

c) Proteomics: EVs isolated from cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) or brain interstitial fluid are analysed via Data-Independent Acquisition (DIA). MaxQuant/Perseus pipeline identifies hyperphosphorylated IRS-1 (inactive state) and elevated A\beta oligomers in the Ts65Dn EV fraction.

Phase 2: Multi-Omics Integration Using mixOmics DIABLO, the three datasets are conceptually fused. The algorithm identifies a highly correlated "Metabolic-Failure Component." This component dictates that the drop in Pik3ca mRNA perfectly correlates with the rise in EV-derived hyperphosphorylated IRS-1, which directly predicts the accumulation of un-utilized metabolic substrates.

Phase 3: Visualization and Discovery A multi-layered network built in Cytoscape visually maps this cascade. Centrality analysis identifies PTEN’s negative regulator of PI3K overexpressed due to trisomic dosage imbalance (depending on the specific mouse model's genomic breakpoints or trans-acting factors) as the hub gene driving the network. The study concludes that EV-derived phosphorylated IRS-1 serves as a viable, circulating biomarker reflective of the downstream metabolic crash in the Ts65Dn brain.

12. CHALLENGES AND LIMITATIONS:

Despite the immense power of multi-omics integration, several persistent bioinformatics challenges remain:

a) **Data Heterogeneity and Sparsity:** Mass spectrometry-based proteomics and metabolomics suffer from missing value problems (often >20% missingness). While

imputation methods (e.g., k-Nearest Neighbors, drawing from a minimal distribution) exist, they introduce statistical assumptions that can artificially inflate false positive rates in integrated networks (Lazar et al., 2016).

b) **Batch Effects:** Combining datasets generated across different sequencing platforms, mass spectrometers, or experimental days introduces profound batch effects. Computational harmonization using empirical Bayes frameworks, such as the ComBat algorithm (Johnson et al., 2007) within the sva package, is mandatory before integration to prevent artificial clustering.

c) **Temporal Staggering:** The central dogma introduces natural temporal delays. A rapidly fluctuating metabolite may not temporally align with a steady-state mRNA transcript measured at the identical chronological time point. Static multi-omics integration struggles to capture these dynamic temporal kinetics (Haas et al., 2017).

d) **Biological Complexity of DS Models:** Mouse models like Ts65Dn possess trisomy of genes orthologous to human chromosome 21 but also encompass non-orthologous centromeric regions (e.g., from mouse chromosome 17), complicating the translational mapping of the identified pathogenic networks directly to human AD-DS.

13. FUTURE PERSPECTIVES:

The bioinformatics landscape for investigating AD-DS is rapidly evolving. The next generation of pipelines will likely pivot from bulk tissue homogenates toward highly localized and individualized resolutions.

13.1 Single-Cell and Single-Nucleus Multi-Omics:

The brain is highly heterogeneous. Bulk RNA-seq aggregates the signal from neurons, microglia, and astrocytes. Single-nucleus RNA-seq (snRNA-seq), particularly when joint-profiled with single-cell ATAC-seq (chromatin accessibility) using multimodal algorithms like Seurats Weighted Nearest Neighbor (WNN) analysis (Hao et al., 2021), will allow researchers to pinpoint whether insulin resistance originates intrinsically within susceptible cholinergic neurons or is triggered extrinsically by neuroinflammatory microglia.

13.2 Spatial Transcriptomics and Metabolomics:

Spatial omics preserves the geographical context of a tissue section. Platforms like 10x Genomics Visium mapping transcripts, married with spatial MALDI-imaging mass spectrometry mapping metabolites, will soon be computationally integrated. Future pipelines

will utilize algorithms like Giotto or Seurat to map exactly where in the Ts65Dn hippocampus glucose utilization ceases in spatial relation to an accumulating amyloid plaque.

13.3 AI-Driven Biomarker Discovery:

Deep learning frameworks, utilizing artificial neural networks (ANNs) and graph convolutional networks (GCNs), are slowly replacing traditional machine learning for multi-omics integration (Subramanian et al., 2020). By training deep learning models on vast cohorts of DS mouse multi-omics data, researchers will be able to computationally predict the earliest sub-clinical onset of brain insulin resistance with perfect accuracy, screening purely for therapeutic reversal in silico prior to in vivo validation.

14. CONCLUSION:

Unravelling the precise mechanisms linking Down syndrome to early-onset Alzheimer's disease requires an acceptance of immense biological complexity. Brain insulin resistance acts as a critical pathological bridge, characterized by interconnected genetic, signalling, and metabolic failures. As demonstrated in this review, advancing our understanding relies less on isolated single-omics studies and heavily on sophisticated, integrated bioinformatics pipelines. By standardizing the rigorous processing of RNA-seq, non-targeted metabolomics, and extracellular vesicle proteomics, and mathematically fusing these dimensions using latent variable models and network topology, researchers can identify reliable multi-omics biomarkers. Ultimately, these computational blueprints not only demystify the pathogenic trajectory of the Ts65Dn mouse brain but also lay the groundwork for discovering viable, early-intervention therapeutics for individuals with Down syndrome facing Alzheimer's disease.

REFERENCES:

Antonarakis, S. E., Skotko, B. G., Rafii, M. S., Strydom, A., Pape, S. E., Bianchi, D. W., Sherman, S. L., & Reeves, R. H. (2020). Down syndrome. Nature Reviews Disease Primers, 6(1), 9.

Argelaguet, R., Velten, B., Arnol, D., Dietrich, S., Macaulay, I. C., Huber, W., & Stegle, O. (2018). Multi-Omics Factor Analysisa framework for unsupervised integration of multi-omics data sets. Molecular Systems Biology, 14(6), e8124.

Bader, G. D., & Hogue, C. W. (2003). An automated method for finding molecular complexes in large protein interaction networks. BMC Bioinformatics, 4(1), 2.

Bolger, A. M., Lohse, M., & Usadel, B. (2014). Trimmomatic: a flexible trimmer for Illumina sequence data. Bioinformatics, 30(15), 2114-2120.

Cock, P. J., Fields, C. J., Goto, N., Heuer, M. L., & Rice, P. M. (2010). The Sanger FASTQ file format for sequences with quality scores, and the Solexa/Illumina FASTQ variants. Nucleic Acids Research, 38(6), 1767-1771.

Cox, J., & Mann, M. (2008). MaxQuant enables high peptide identification rates, individualized p.p.b.-range mass accuracies and proteome-wide protein quantification. Nature Biotechnology, 26(12), 1367-1372.

Cox, J., Hein, M. Y., Luber, C. A., Paron, I., Nagaraj, N., & Mann, M. (2014). Accurate proteome-wide label-free quantification by delayed normalization and maximal peptide ratio extraction, termed MaxLFQ. Molecular & Cellular Proteomics, 13(9), 2513-2526.

De Felice, F. G., Lourenco, M. V., & Ferreira, S. T. (2014). How does brain insulin resistance develop in Alzheimer's disease? Alzheimer's & Dementia, 10(1), S26-S32.

Dobin, A., Davis, C. A., Schlesinger, F., Drenkow, J., Zaleski, C., Jha, S., Batut, P., Chaisson, M., & Gingeras, T. R. (2013). STAR: ultrafast universal RNA-seq aligner. Bioinformatics, 29(1), 15-21.

Ewels, P., Magnusson, M., Lundin, S., & KÃ¤ller, M. (2016). MultiQC: summarize analysis results for multiple tools and samples in a single report. Bioinformatics, 32(19), 3047-3048.

Gu, Z., Eils, R., & Schlesner, M. (2016). Complex heatmaps reveal patterns and correlations in multidimensional genomic data. Bioinformatics, 32(18), 2847-2849.

Haas, R., Zelezniak, A., Iacovacci, J., Kamrad, S., Townsend, S., & Ralser, M. (2017). Designing and interpreting 'multi-omic' experiments that sympathetically reflect systemic flow of information. Expert Review of Molecular Diagnostics, 17(4), 305-322.

Hao, Y., Hao, S., Andersen-Nissen, E., Mauck, W. M., Zheng, S., Butler, A., ... & Satija, R. (2021). Integrated analysis of multimodal single-cell data. Cell, 184(13), 3573-3587.

Hasin, Y., Seldin, M., & Lusis, A. (2017). Multi-omics approaches to disease. Genome Biology, 18(1), 83.

Herault, Y., Delabar, J. M., Fisher, E. M., Tybulewicz, V. L., Yu, E., & Brault, V. (2017). Rodent models in Down syndrome research: impact and future opportunities. Disease Models & Mechanisms, 10(10), 1165-1186.

Johnson, W. E., Li, C., & Rabinovic, A. (2007). Adjusting batch effects in microarray expression data using empirical Bayes methods. Biostatistics, 8(1), 118-127.

Kapogiannis, D., Mustapic, M., Shardell, M. D., Berchik, Z. R., Eitan, E., Melvin, D., ... & Mattson, M. P. (2019). Association of extracellular vesicle biomarkers with Alzheimer disease in the Baltimore Longitudinal Study of Aging. JAMA Neurology, 76(11), 1340-1351.

Kim, D., Langmead, B., & Salzberg, S. L. (2015). HISAT: a fast spliced aligner with low memory requirements. Nature Methods, 12(4), 357-360.

Langfelder, P., & Horvath, S. (2008). WGCNA: an R package for weighted correlation network analysis. BMC Bioinformatics, 9(1), 559.

Lazar, C., Gatto, L., Ferro, M., Bruley, C., & Burger, T. (2016). Accounting for the multiple natures of missing values in label-free quantitative proteomics data sets to compare imputation strategies. Journal of Proteome Research, 15(4), 1116-1125.

Liao, Y., Smyth, G. K., & Shi, W. (2014). featureCounts: an efficient general purpose program for assigning sequence reads to genomic features. Bioinformatics, 30(7), 923-930.

Love, M. I., Huber, W., & Anders, S. (2014). Moderated estimation of fold change and dispersion for RNA-seq data with DESeq2. Genome Biology, 15(12), 550.

Martens, L., Chambers, M., Sturm, M., Kessner, D., Levander, F., Shofstahl, J., ... & Hermjakob, H. (2011). mzMLa community standard for mass spectrometry data. Molecular & Cellular Proteomics, 10(1), R110.000133.

Pang, Z., Chong, J., Zhou, G., de Lima Morais, D. A., Chang, L., Barrette, M., ... & Xia, J. (2021). MetaboAnalyst 5.0: narrowing the gap between raw spectra and functional insights. Nucleic Acids Research, 49(W1), W388-W396.

Patro, R., Duggal, G., Love, M. I., Irizarry, R. A., & Kingsford, C. (2017). Salmon provides fast and bias-aware quantification of transcript expression. Nature Methods, 14(4), 417-419.

Perluigi, M., Pupo, G., Tramutola, A., Cini, C., Coccia, R., Barone, E., ... & Butterfield, D. A. (2014). Neuropathological role of PI3K/Akt/mTOR axis in Down syndrome brain. Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA)-Molecular Basis of Disease, 1842(7), 1144-1153.

Puchalska, P., & Crawford, P. A. (2017). Multi-dimensional metabolic and signaling roles of branched-chain amino acids in health and disease. Cell Metabolism, 25(4), 790-804.

Robinson, M. D., McCarthy, D. J., & Smyth, G. K. (2010). edgeR: a Bioconductor package for differential expression analysis of digital gene expression data. Bioinformatics, 26(1), 139-140.

Rohart, F., Gautier, B., Singh, A., & LÃª Cao, K. A. (2017). mixOmics: An R package for 'omics feature selection and multiple data integration. PLoS Computational Biology, 13(11), e1005752.

Shannon, P., Markiel, A., Ozier, O., Baliga, N. S., Wang, J. T., Ramage, D., ... & Ideker, T. (2003). Cytoscape: a software environment for integrated models of biomolecular interaction networks. Genome Research, 13(11), 2498-2504.

Smith, C. A., Want, E. J., O'Maille, G., Abagyan, R., & Siuzdak, G. (2006). XCMS: processing mass spectrometry data for metabolite profiling using nonlinear peak alignment, matching, and identification. Analytical Chemistry, 78(3), 779-787.

Subramanian, A., Tamayo, P., Mootha, V. K., Mukherjee, S., Ebert, B. L., Gillette, M. A., ... & Mesirov, J. P. (2005). Gene set enrichment analysis: a knowledge-based approach for interpreting genome-wide expression profiles. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, 102(43), 15545-15550.

Subramanian, I., Verma, S., Kumar, S., Jere, A., & Anamika, K. (2020). Multi-omics data integration, interpretation, and its application. Bioinformatics and Biology Insights, 14, 1177932219899051.

Szklarczyk, D., Gable, A. L., Lyon, D., Junge, A., Wyder, S., Huerta-Cepas, J., ... & von Mering, C. (2019). STRING v11: protein-protein association networks with increased coverage, supporting functional discovery in genome-wide experimental datasets. Nucleic Acids Research, 47(D1), D607-D613.

Tramutola, A., Lanzillotta, C., Di Domenico, F., Head, E., Butterfield, D. A., Perluigi, M., & Barone, E. (2020). Brain insulin resistance in Alzheimer disease and related disorders: mechanisms and therapeutic approaches. FASEB Journal, 34(3), 3573-3580.

Tyanova, S., Temu, T., Sinitcyn, P., Carlson, A., Hein, M. Y., Geiger, T., ... & Cox, J. (2016). The Perseus computational platform for comprehensive analysis of (prote)omics data. Nature Methods, 13(9), 731-740.

Wickham, H. (2016). ggplot2: elegant graphics for data analysis. Springer-Verlag New York.

Wiseman, Ni. T., Al-Janabi, T., Hardy, J., Karmiloff-Smith, A., Nizetic, D., Tybulewicz, V. L., ... & Strydom, A. (2015). A genetic cause of Alzheimer disease: mechanistic insights from Down syndrome. Nature Reviews Neuroscience, 16(9), 564-574.

Wishart, D. S., Feunang, Y. D., Marcu, A., Guo, A. C., Liang K., Vazquez-Fresno, R., ... & Scalbert, A. (2018). HMDB 4.0: the human metabolome database for 2018. Nucleic Acids Research, 46(D1), D608-D617.

Wu, T., Hu, E., Xu, S., Chen, M., Guo, P., Dai, Z., ... & Yu, G. (2021). clusterProfiler 4.0: A universal enrichment tool for interpreting omics data. The Innovation, 2(3), 100141.

Yu, G., Wang, L. G., Yan, G. R., & He, Q. Y. (2015). DOSE: an R/Bioconductor package for disease ontology semantic and enrichment analysis. Bioinformatics, 31(4), 608-609.

Zhou, G., Pang, Z., Lu, Y., Ewald, J., & Xia, J. (2022). OmicsNet 2.0: a web-based platform for multi-omics integration and network visual analytics. Nucleic Acids Research, 50(W1), W527-W533.

Benjamini, Y., & Hochberg, Y. (1995). Controlling the false discovery rate: a practical and powerful approach to multiple testing. Journal of the Royal Statistical Society: Series B (Methodological), 57(1), 289-300.

Carling, D. (2017). AMPK signalling in health and disease. Current Opinion in Cell Biology, 45, 31-37.

Chen, C., Nadauld, L. D., & Butte, A. J. (2014). Data-driven repurposing of drugs for Alzheimer's disease. Clinical Pharmacology & Therapeutics, 96(2), 273-276.

Colas, D., Gharib, A., Locatelli, A., Cespuglio, R., & Sarda, N. (2004). Energy deficit in the Ts65Dn mouse model of Down syndrome: lack of an effect of acetyl-L-carnitine administration. Neuroscience Letters, 368(3), 284-288.

Cui, Q., Lewis, I. A., Hegeman, A. D., Anderson, M. E., Li, J., Schulte, C. F., ... & Sussman, M. R. (2008). Metabolite identification via the Madison Metabolomics Consortium Database. Nature Biotechnology, 26(2), 162-164.

Di Domenico, F., Barone, E., Perluigi, M., & Butterfield, D. A. (2013). Strategy to reduce free radical leakages and prevent energetic impairment in Down syndrome and Alzheimer's disease. Free Radical Biology and Medicine, 62, 14-23.

Echtay, K. S. (2007). Mitochondrial uncoupling proteinswhat is their physiological role? Free Radical Biology and Medicine, 43(10), 1351-1371.

Folstein, M. F., Folstein, S. E., & McHugh, P. R. (1975). "Mini-mental state": a practical method for grading the cognitive state of patients for the clinician. Journal of Psychiatric Research, 12(3), 189-198.

Hasin, Y., Seldin, M., & Lusis, A. (2017). Multi-omics approaches to disease. Genome Biology, 18(1), 83.

Hornbeck, P. V., Zhang, B., Murray, B., Kornhauser, J. M., Latham, V., & Skrzypek, E. (2015). PhosphoSitePlus, 2014: mutations, PTMs and recalibrations. Nucleic Acids Research, 43(D1), D512-D520.

Lambert, J. C., Ibrahim-Verbaas, C. A., Harold, D., Naj, A. C., Sims, R., Bellenguez, C., ... & Amouyel, P. (2013). Meta-analysis of 74,046 individuals identifies 11 new susceptibility loci for Alzheimer's disease. Nature Genetics, 45(12), 1452-1458.

Lee, J. W., & Kim, Y. H. (2017). Analyzing extracellular vesicles to understand brain health and disease. Experimental & Molecular Medicine, 49(3), e300.

MacLean, B., Tomazela, D. M., Shulman, N., Chambers, M., Finney, G. L., Frewen, B., ... & MacCoss, M. J. (2010). Skyline: an open source document editor for creating and analyzing targeted proteomics experiments. Bioinformatics, 26(7), 966-968.

Ritchie, M. E., Phipson, B., Wu, D., Hu, Y., Law, C. W., Shi, W., & Smyth, G. K. (2015). limma powers differential expression analyses for RNA-sequencing and microarray studies. Nucleic Acids Research, 43(7), e47.

Sinha, A., Hoshino, A., Gifford, P., Karels, H. C., Kawasaki, Y., Meydan, C., ... & Lyden, D. (2020). Extracellular vesicles from human lung cancer cells mediate immunosuppression in patients with small cell lung cancer. Nature Communications, 11(1), 1-13.

Steen, E., Terry, B. M., Rivera, E. J., Cannon, C. E., Neely, T. R., Tavares, R., ... & de la Monte, S. M. (2005). Impaired insulin and insulin-like growth factor expression and signaling mechanisms in Alzheimer's diseaseis this type 3 diabetes? Journal of Alzheimer's Disease, 7(1), 63-80.

Talbot, K., Wang, H. Y., Kazi, H., Han, L. Y., Bakshi, K. P., Stucky, A., ... & Arnold, S. E. (2012). Demonstrated brain insulin resistance in Alzheimer's disease patients is associated with IGF-1 resistance, IRS-1 dysregulation, and cognitive decline. Journal of Clinical Investigation, 122(4), 1316-1338.

Wang, Y. P., & Miao, D. F. (2022). Metabolic mechanisms underlying Alzheimer's disease: focusing on brain insulin resistance. Frontiers in Aging Neuroscience, 14, 888795.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Chapter 4

Bacterial Enzymes as Frameworks for Protein Design and Biotechnological Innovation

*Karobi Dey, Semanti Ghosh**

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata-700121

**Corresponding Author's Email ID: semantig@svu.ac.in*

ABSTRACT

Bacterial enzymes are indispensable biocatalysts that underpin a wide spectrum of industrial, biomedical, and biotechnological innovation owing to their catalytic efficiency, adaptability, and ease of large-scale microbial production. Naturally occurring bacterial enzymes-including hydrolases, oxidoreductases, transferases, and lyases-already play central roles in healthcare, food technology, textiles, detergents, pulp and paper, and bioremediation. Recent advances in protein engineering have shifted the focus from enzyme discovery to the deliberate design of enzymes with tailored properties, employing strategies such as directed evolution, rational design, and artificial intelligence- driven computational modelling to enhance stability, catalytic turnover, and substrate specificity. These innovations have enabled bacterial enzymes to be optimized for extreme environments and novel substrate recognition, revolutionizing biotechnological applications: lignocellulose-degrading enzymes from *Clostridium* and *Bacillus* drive second-generation biofuel production; microbial expression of triterpenoid biosynthetic enzymes enables scalable synthesis of scarce yet pharmaceutically valuable plant-derived compounds; engineered proteases and lipases improve detergent formulations and green chemistry processes; while redesigned oxygenase and hydrolases are harnessed for the efficient degradation of plastics, dyes, and petroleum pollutants. The integration of synthetic biology- including CRISPR-based genome editing, modular pathway construction, operon engineering, and chassis optimization- has further expanded the scope of bacterial enzymes, enabling microorganisms to serve as programmable factories capable of producing both optimized natural enzymes and entirely novel catalytic functions. Collectively, these advances represent a paradigm shift, positioning bacterial enzymes as customizable molecular tools that bridge microbial diversity with modern biotechnology, thereby advancing sustainable solutions for energy, medicine, and global biotechnological innovation.

Keywords: Computational enzyme modelling, De novo enzyme design, Synthetic biology, CRISPR-Cas genome editing, Modular pathway construction, Extremozymes.

---

1. INTRODUCTION:

Bacterial enzymes have long been a powerful tool in biotechnology, with extraordinary catalytic efficiency, adaptability, and ease of production. Their structural simplicity, functional diversity, and genetic accessibility make them ideal frameworks for protein engineering and biocatalyst development. Further improvements in the approach to modifying and redesigning bacterial enzymes has been possible due to advances (Patel, 2011) in molecular biology, genomics, and computational technologies that have enabled scientists to develop more precise and stable enzymes for specific biochemical reactions (Rossi, 2000). The integration of machine learning, AI, and synthetic biology into enzyme design during the past few years has provided opportunities to make predict protein structures, design novel active sites, and carry out optimizations of interactions between the enzyme and its substrate. Meanwhile, CRISPR-Cas systems, metagenomics, and genome mining have expanded the discovery of new enzyme scaffolds from diverse microbial sources, including extremophiles. This review covers how bacterial enzymes represent paradigms for protein design and biotechnological development, with a focus on recent computational, genomic, and synthetic developments that are driving the next generation of engineered enzymes for industrial, environmental, and clinical applications (Kumar, 2023).

2. OVERVIEW OF BACTERIAL ENZYMES:

Bacterial enzymes are biocatalysts produced by various bacterial species that catalyse critical biochemical reactions in both nature and industrial contexts. They possess high catalytic efficiency, stability, and adaptability under extreme conditions of temperature, pH, and salinity conditions. These properties make them superior to many eukaryotic enzymes in large-scale biotechnological applications. Because of their fast growth, simple genetics, and easy manipulation, bacteria are excellent hosts for the production and engineering of enzymes. (Das, 2021) Sources include the genera Bacillus, Escherichia coli, Pseudomonas, and Streptomyces, among others, which produce enzymes such as proteases, lipases, amylases, and restriction endonucleases. These bacterial enzymes will play key roles in industrial biocatalysis, molecular biology, the pharmaceutical industry, and environmental biotechnology. Recent advances in protein engineering, synthetic biology, and artificial intelligence have transformed these natural

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

catalysts into custom-designed molecular tools. A broad structural diversity and modifiable frameworks make them powerful models for designing novel or improved enzymes to suit specific biotechnological needs (Lee, 2022).

3. STRUCTURAL AND FUNCTIONAL DIVERSITY OF BACTERIAL ENZYMES:

Bacterial enzymes display a remarkable range of structural and functional diversity, a testament to evolutionary adaptation for performing diverse ecological and metabolic functions. Structurally, they encompass a wide array of folds, such as α/β hydrolase, TIM-barrel, Rossmann fold, and β-propeller architectures that offer stable and versatile scaffolds with the capability to support catalytic activity even under harsh environmental stresses. General structural features like flexible loops surrounding the active site, such as the P-loop and Ω-loop in β-lactamases, participate in substrate recognition and catalysis, further contributing to the functional diversity across enzyme families (Nielsen, 2004).

Functionally, enzymes from bacteria span major enzyme classes: hydrolases, oxidoreductases, transferases, lyases, ligases, and isomerases, each catalysing important biochemical processes critical for bacterial survival and metabolic versatility. Extremophilic species have evolved enzymes that exhibit remarkable thermostability, cold activity, salinity tolerance, or acid resistance; these enzymes are highly valued in industrial settings where performance under harsh conditions is desired (Becker, 2012). High-resolution structure techniques such as X-ray crystallography and cryo-EM, along with computational methods, have elucidated mechanisms of active site dynamics, substrate specificity, and allosteric regulation. This structural and functional knowledge forms the basis for more advanced approaches in protein engineering, directed evolution, and machine learning-driven enzyme optimization to allow customized design of biocatalysts with tailored function for novel biotechnological and therapeutic applications (Reetz, 2023).

4. BACTERIAL ENZYMES AS MODEL SYSTEMS FOR PROTEIN ENGINEERING:

Enzymes of bacterial origin are strong model systems for protein engineering because they have well-known structures, a tractable genetic system, and are easy to produce on a large scale. Their simple genomes, fast growth, and amenability to manipulation via recombinant DNA techniques makes bacteria like *Escherichia coli*, *Bacillus subtilis*, and *Pseudomonas* good models for evaluating enzyme function and redesign of enzymes. Many bacterial enzymes like Taq polymerase, β-lactamase, and subtilisin protease have solved crystal structures, which allow biochemists to observe active sites and linking regions and sequence the structural

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

features, often with extremely high fidelity. They are used in engineering, through rational design, which entails making site-specific mutations based on structural data, and in directed evolution, via random mutagenesis and screening (Sharma, 2020). Random mutagenesis can yield modified organisms or enzymes with improved properties, such as greater activity, greater stability, or better substrate specificity (Nielsen, 2004) . Hybrid approaches to engineering enzymes, which could include tools from computational modelling, AI predictions, mutagenesis mutations in the lab, and other forms of structural data to reorganize the structure or function biochemical model to improve enzymes. Bacterial enzymes represent largely practical applications of an experimental tool, but encapsulate a conceptual maximized understanding of structure-function relationships. Using structure-function knowledge enzymes could be designed or optimized as biocatalysts for improved industrial processes in biotechnology, medicine and the environment (Chen, 2015).

5. METHODS OF PROTEIN DESIGN AND ENGINEERING:

Various experimental and computational strategies in protein design and engineering have been combined to improve or creating new functions in bacterial enzymes. The common approaches include rational design, directed evolution, and computational/AI-assisted methods. Rational design is based on deep structural and mechanistic insights, usually obtained through studies of crystallography, molecular dynamics, and quantum mechanics, to introduce targeted mutations into catalytic or regulatory regions for the purpose of function optimization (Williams, 2018). In contrast, directed evolution uses natural selection to create diverse mutational libraries followed by high-throughput screening to identify variants that have gained superior stability, activity, or specificity (Das, 2021).

Recent breakthroughs in machine learning and deep generative models have revolutionized computational enzyme design and make it possible to predict the folding, active site architecture, and substrate interactions of proteins with high accuracy using computational tools like Rosetta, AlphaFold2, and CLEAN. Integration of these computational frameworks with experimental mutagenesis and screening platforms accelerates the development of tailor-made bacterial enzymes that transcend the limitations of natural catalysis (Nielsen, 2004). Melding rational design with directed evolution in hybrid approaches, enables iterative optimization to bridge the gap between theoretical prediction and empirical validation. Together, the techniques represent cornerstones of modern protein engineering, propelling innovation in biocatalysis, synthetic biology, and therapeutic enzyme development. This approach serves to improve not only the performance of enzymes but also expands the

repertoire of biocatalytic functions accessible to industrial, environmental, and medical applications (Lee, 2022).

6. MACHINE LEARNING AND ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE IN ENZYME DESIGN:

Artificial intelligence (AI) and machine learning (ML) have changed the landscape of enzyme design, especially when utilized in conjunction with bacteria that serve as ideal enzyme expression, testing, and optimization platforms. The advanced AI models such as AlphaFold2, CLEAN, and RoseTTAFold accurately predict bacterial enzyme structures with near-experimental resolution, giving researchers vital information on folding pathways, active-site geometry, and substrate binding (Patel, 2017). Predictive information is useful for guiding rational mutagenesis to improve catalytic efficiency, stability, or specificity, among other things. The same can be applied in ML algorithms that were trained on extensive genomic and proteomic datasets on bacteria, to identify sequence–function relationships that lead to the discovery of new enzymes from metagenomic sources. In silico approaches, such as deep generative models, reinforcement learning, and graph neural networks, have begun to be developed and utilized to either design entirely new bacterial enzymes or improve existing ones for industrial use. When combined with high-throughput bacterial screening and synthetic biology, data-driven enzyme design can effectively expedite the iterative cycle of: "design–build–test–learn" which results in a significant acceleration of time and associated cost of development of a customized biocatalyst. Overall, combining AI with microbial systems is transforming the field of enzyme engineering into one that is data-lead, and allows us to engineer highly efficient, sustainable and intelligent biocatalysts for applications in biotechnology and medicine (Kumar, 2023).

De novo protein and enzyme design is the production of entirely new proteins "from scratch" as opposed to modifying existing proteins through synthetic biology protocols employing computational programs developed to achieve the desired catalytic or structural properties. In particular, this approach leverages the inherent rapid growth rates and amenable genetic systems, which can be developed and modified at a low cost (especially in bacterial systems), and tested and modified synthetic enzymes *in vivo* (Meier, 2021). Programs such as Rosetta, AlphaFold2, and Protein MPNN utilize the given amino acid sequence to predict how the amino acid sequence fold into stable 3D structures, allowing the scientific community to "design" an entirely new active site, and in addition new metal-binding motifs, or catalytic triads that do not exist in nature. Following design, synthetic genes that encode these synthetic

enzymes are transformed into bacterial systems for expression and functional screening. The combination of computational modelling, sequence-based AI predictions of protein structure, and bacterial expression systems enables rapid evaluation and optimization of novel biocatalysts. Therefore, de novo enzyme design in bacteria is a new frontier in protein engineering, greatly expanding the scope of natural catalysis into synthetic biocatalysis for use in applications such as green chemistry, pharmaceuticals and/or synthetic metabolic pathways (Becker, 2012).

8. PRECISION ENGINEERING: GENOMICS AND SYNTHETIC BIOLOGY:

Precision engineering of bacterial enzymes through genomics and synthetic biology involves the use of highly advanced tools and techniques that improve enzyme function and regulation. CRISPR-Cas-based genome editing allows for targeted, efficient modification of bacterial genomes, whereby precise changes can be made in enzyme-coding genes to alter catalytic properties or introduce new functionalities. It is like genetic scissors enabling site-specific knock-ins and knock-outs, or base editing with outstanding specificity and efficiency. Synthetic biology circuits further extend this engineering scope to dynamic, programmable control of enzyme expression and activity via regulatory modules responsive to environmental or intracellular signals (Lee, 2022). Moreover, reprogramming the genetic code with unnatural amino acids confers novel chemical functionalities onto enzymes beyond the canonical 20 amino acids, which expands catalytic repertoires and allows tailored enzyme features, including improved stability, altered substrate specificity, or novel reaction mechanisms. Together, these state-of-the-art genomic and synthetic biology approaches form a robust precision toolkit that enables the rational design and adaptive control of bacterial enzymes for a variety of biotechnological applications (Das, 2021).

9. METAGENOMIC ENZYME IMMOBILIZATION AND MULTI-ENZYME SYSTEM ENGINEERING:

Metagenomic analysis has created new opportunities for the discovery of novel bacterial enzymes by directly sequencing genetic material from environmental sources, while bypassing the need to culture microorganisms. Shotgun sequencing, bioinformatic annotation, and functional screening enable researchers to find new bacterial enzymes with unique catalytic properties, for example, thermostability or tolerance towards organic solvents. Once a new bacterial enzyme has been identified, that enzyme can be expressed in a bacterial host, such as *E. coli*, for large-scale production and characterization. To improve performance and

reusability, bacterial enzymes are often immobilized using techniques such as nanoengineering, or 3D bioprinting, or are encapsulated on polymeric supports or nanomaterials. Immobilization improves enzyme stability, retains enzymatic activity, and prolongs operational lifetime, making bacterial biocatalysts more amenable to implementation in an industrial context. Moreover, the engineering of multi-enzyme systems, often using engineered bacterial consortia, provides opportunities to create synthetic metabolic pathways, using multiple bacterial enzymes in sequence to produce inherently complex biochemical conversions. High-throughput screening and the development of synthetic biology enable us to efficiently optimize these cascades and facilitate the development of environmentally sustainable bioprocesses that bio-mimic natural metabolic networks for applications in biotechnology, green chemistry, and environmental remediation (Meier, 2021).

10. APPLICATIONS AND REAL-WORLD IMPACT OF BACTERIAL ENZYME:

Bacterial enzymes play a pivotal role across industrial, medical, environmental, and clinical sectors. In industries, they drive biomanufacturing, biofuel production, and green chemistry, offering eco-friendly alternatives to chemical catalysts. In medicine and pharmaceuticals, engineered enzymes enable targeted drug synthesis, disease diagnostics, and personalized therapeutics through AI-guided design for enhanced specificity and stability (Reetz, 2023). Enzyme-based biosensors are transforming healthcare and industry by enabling real-time monitoring of metabolites, toxins, and pathogens. Environmentally, bacterial enzymes aid in bioremediation, waste conversion, and sustainable agriculture. Together, these advances highlight the synergy of AI, synthetic biology, and metagenomics in reshaping enzyme applications for a sustainable and precision-driven future (Kumar, 2023).

11. CASE STUDIES OF ENGINEERED BACTERIAL ENZYME:

Recent advances show how bacterial enzymes are being engineered for a variety of applied purposes, from various industries and medicine to diagnostics. BRAIN Biotech AG successfully combined rational protein engineering with metagenomic mining of more than 100,000 homologous sequences to develop thermostable bacterial enzymes for high-temperature industrial biocatalysis. In medical biotechnology, a genetically modified *E. coli* Nissle (1917) that expressed PAL reached nearly double the enzyme activity for the treatment of phenylketonuria, illustrating the potentials of live bacterial therapeutics. Similarly, enzyme-nanomaterial hybrid biosensors have improved the real-time monitoring of metabolites and pathogens, thus offering breakthroughs in diagnostics and environmental detection. Altogether,

these cases illustrate how AI, metagenomics, and synthetic biology are currently turning bacterial enzymes into powerful tools for sustainable industrial processes and precision medicine (Nielsen, 2004).

12. SYNTHETIC BIOLOGY APPROACHES TO ENZYME INNOVATION:

Synthetic biology utilizes engineered bacterial enzymes as one of the versatile platforms for innovative protein design and improved biotechnological applications. In the process, synthetic biology, through molecular engineering tools like genetic modification, site-directed mutagenesis, and computational modelling, allows for precision tuning of enzyme properties, including specificity, stability, and catalytic efficiency (Williams, 2018). Molecular docking and artificial intelligence are some of the advanced in silico techniques that further accelerate screening and rational design of novel enzymes tailor-made for industrial requirements. Synthetic biology also enables microbial consortia construction and multi-enzyme pathways that optimize substrate utilization and enable complex chemical conversions. Nanotechnology-based enzyme immobilization enhances enzyme stability and reusability, allowing for industrially viable large-scale processes. Collectively, these approaches using synthetic biology empower bespoke bacterial enzymes to drive sustainable, efficient, and scalable bioprocess innovations (Chen, 2015).

13. CHALLENGES IN ENZYME ENGINEERING AND INDUSTRIAL SCALE-UP:

Despite major advances, several challenges hinder the translation of engineered bacterial enzymes from lab to industry. Achieving enzyme stability, activity, and solubility under harsh industrial conditions remains difficult, while protein misfolding and low expression yields limit large-scale production. Additionally, predicting functional outcomes of mutations-even with AI and computational tools-can be unreliable due to complex protein dynamics. High production costs, cofactor dependencies, and downstream purification issues further complicate commercialization. Overcoming these barriers requires integrating machine learning, synthetic biology, and process engineering to design robust, scalable, and economically viable bacterial enzyme systems for biotechnological innovation (Kumar, 2023).

14. FUTURE PROSPECTS IN ENZYME-BASED BIOTECHNOLOGY:

Future perspectives for enzyme-based biotechnology are very bright, using bacterial enzymes as a framework for protein design in the light of advances in computational design, synthetic biology, and machine learning. Indeed, recently developed algorithms can optimize several properties of enzymes simultaneously without breaking the traditional stability-activity trade-

off. The integration of AI-powered structure prediction tools like AlphaFold2 has dramatically expanded the range of proteins amenable to design and optimization. This enables fast engineering of robust, highly selective enzymes for anything from sustainable chemical manufacturing to precision therapeutics (Rossi, 2000). Moreover, genome mining and metagenomics continue to uncover enormous under-explored reservoirs of novel enzyme scaffolds, which may also be used to discover new catalytic activities. Synthetic biology further empowers the construction of artificial metabolic pathways and enzyme consortia that allow complex biochemical conversions. Overall, these technologies are expected to converge toward breakthroughs in industrial biocatalysis, environmental sustainability, and personalized medicine, enabling rapid developments of tailor-made enzymes outperforming natural ones in various biotechnological arenas (Sharma, 2020).

15. CONCLUSION:

Bacterial enzymes have emerged as pivotal tools for protein engineering and biotechnological advancement, uniting the catalytic versatility of natural systems with the precision of modern design. Advances in machine learning, synthetic biology, metagenomics, and structural bioinformatics now enable the rational design, prediction, and optimization of enzymes with remarkable accuracy. These breakthroughs have broadened enzyme applications in industrial biocatalysis, medicine, diagnostics, and environmental sustainability, underscoring their transformative potential. Despite this progress, challenges such as instability under extreme conditions, inefficient scale-up, and unpredictable mutational effects continue to limit widespread industrial deployment. The integration of AI-driven modelling, CRISPR-mediated genome editing, and high-throughput screening is paving the way to overcome these constraints. Looking ahead, the convergence of computational design, systems biology, and sustainable engineering is poised to yield a new generation of bacterial enzymes that are both highly efficient and environmentally resilient-propelling the next wave of green and intelligent biotechnology.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT:

We express our gratitude to Swami Vivekananda University for providing us with the necessary facilities for conducting our research

REFERENCES:

Alberghina, L. (Ed.). (2000). *Protein engineering for industrial biotechnology*. CRC Press.

Arora, N. K., Mishra, J., & Mishra, V. (Eds.). (2020). *Microbial enzymes: Roles and applications in industries*. Springer Singapore.

de Bruijn, F. J. (Ed.). (2011). *Handbook of molecular microbial ecology I: Metagenomics and complementary approaches*. Wiley.

Engel, P. (2021). *Enzymes (Very short introductions)*. Oxford University Press.

Kara, S., & Rudroff, F. (Eds.). (2021). *Enzyme cascade design and modelling*. Springer.

Lutz, S., & Bornscheuer, U. T. (Eds.). (2012). *Protein engineering handbook: Volume 3*. Wiley-VCH.

Reetz, M. T., Sun, Z., & Qu, G. (2023). *Enzyme engineering: Selective catalysts for applications in biotechnology, organic chemistry, and life science*. Wiley-VCH.

Satya Eswari, J., & Suryawanshi, N. (Eds.). (2023). *Optimization of sustainable enzymes production: Artificial intelligence and machine learning techniques*. Chapman & Hall / Taylor & Francis.

Springer Editors. (2017). *Functional metagenomics: Tools and applications*. Springer.

Springer Protocols Editors. (2022). *Enzyme engineering: Methods and protocols (Methods in Molecular Biology series)*. Springer.

Svendsen, A. (Ed.). (2004). *Enzyme functionality: Design, engineering, and screening*. CRC Press.

Thatoi, H., Mohapatra, S., & Das, S. K. (Eds.). (2021). *Bioprospecting of enzymes in industry, healthcare and sustainable environment*. Springer Singapore.

Williams, G. (2018). *Modern biocatalysis: Advances towards synthetic biological systems*. Royal Society of Chemistry.

Yeh, W.-K. (Ed.). (2015). *Enzyme technologies: Metagenomics, evolution, biocatalysis and biosynthesis*. Apple Academic Press.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Chapter 5

Environmental Pollutants and Antimicrobial Resistance: The Role of Arsenic in Promoting Multidrug Resistance in the Gut Microbiome

S. Vinitha[1], Debjit De[2]*

[1] *Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata-700121*

[2] *Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata-700121*

**Corresponding Author's Email ID: debjitd@svu.ac.in*

ABSTRACT

The escalating global crisis of antimicrobial resistance (AMR) has prompted extensive investigation into the diverse environmental and biological factors that drive resistance mechanisms. Among these, arsenic - a pervasive environmental pollutant derived from geogenic processes, industrial activities, and agricultural inputs - has emerged as a significant, yet underappreciated, co-selector of multidrug resistance in the gut microbiome. This review examines the mechanistic pathways through which environmentally relevant concentrations of arsenic promote the proliferation and horizontal transfer of antimicrobial resistance genes (ARGs) within the gastrointestinal microbial community. Arsenic exposure selectively enriches bacterial taxa harbouring arsenic resistance operons (ars genes), many of which are genetically co-located with multidrug efflux pumps and resistance determinants on mobile genetic elements such as plasmids and transposons. This co-selection pressure facilitates the dissemination of ARGs across diverse gut microbial populations without direct antibiotic exposure. Furthermore, arsenic-induced oxidative stress and SOS response activation can enhance mutation rates and accelerate resistance evolution. Evidence from metagenomic studies demonstrates functional enrichment of pathways associated with multidrug efflux, metal detoxification, and integron-mediated gene transfer in arsenic-exposed gut environments. Collectively, these findings underscore the critical role of arsenic as an environmental co-driver of AMR, with significant implications for public health, food safety, and the development of comprehensive resistance mitigation strategies. A One Health approach integrating environmental monitoring, microbiome surveillance, and policy interventions is urgently warranted.

Keywords: Arsenic; Antimicrobial resistance; Gut microbiome; Multidrug resistance; Co-selection; Mobile genetic elements; Environmental pollutants; Horizontal gene transfer; Arsenic resistance genes; One Health

---

1. INTRODUCTION:

Antimicrobial resistance (AMR) represents one of the most pressing challenges to global public health in the twenty-first century. The World Health Organization (WHO) has classified AMR as a critical threat, predicting that drug-resistant infections could cause 10 million deaths per year by 2050 if coordinated action is not taken (WHO, 2019). While the overuse and misuse of antibiotics in clinical and agricultural settings have long been recognized as primary drivers of AMR, emerging evidence increasingly implicates environmental pollutants as co-selective agents that accelerate resistance gene dissemination independent of direct antibiotic pressure (Pal et al., 2015).

Among environmental pollutants, heavy metals represent a particularly insidious class of AMR co-selectors. Arsenic, a metalloid ubiquitously distributed in the environment through both natural geochemical processes and anthropogenic activities, has garnered considerable scientific attention in recent years. Arsenic contamination of drinking water, soil, and food commodities is a global public health concern affecting millions of people worldwide, predominantly in South and Southeast Asia, Latin America, and parts of Sub-Saharan Africa (Smedley and Kinniburgh, 2002). The gastrointestinal tract, as the primary site of dietary arsenic absorption, represents a critical interface where arsenic exerts its influence on the resident microbial community.

The human gut microbiome - comprising trillions of microorganisms including bacteria, archaea, fungi, and viruses - plays fundamental roles in host nutrition, immune regulation, and disease resistance. Disruption of this finely balanced community, termed dysbiosis, has been linked to a spectrum of disorders including metabolic syndrome, inflammatory bowel disease, colorectal cancer, and increased vulnerability to infectious diseases (Clemente et al., 2012). Critically, the gut microbiome also serves as a reservoir of antimicrobial resistance genes, collectively termed the gut resistome, that can be amplified and mobilized under selective pressure from environmental toxicants.

The concept of co-selection posits that exposure to non-antibiotic agents including heavy metals like arsenic can simultaneously select for both metal resistance and antibiotic

resistance traits when the corresponding genes are genetically linked on the same mobile genetic elements (Baker-Austin et al., 2006). This phenomenon has critical public health implications: individuals exposed to arsenic through contaminated water or food may unwittingly be selecting for multidrug-resistant microbial populations in their gut, thereby increasing the risk of treatment failures during subsequent infections. This review comprehensively examines the mechanisms by which arsenic promotes multidrug resistance in the gut microbiome, surveys metagenomic evidence supporting these pathways, and discusses public health implications and mitigation strategies within a One Health framework.

2. ARSENIC AS AN ENVIRONMENTAL POLLUTANT: SOURCES, DISTRIBUTION, AND HUMAN EXPOSURE:

2.1 Geogenic and Natural Sources:

Arsenic is a naturally occurring metalloid ranked 20th in abundance in the Earth's crust, predominantly existing in inorganic forms as arsenite [As(III)] and arsenate [As(V)]. Geogenic arsenic release into groundwater is primarily the consequence of reductive dissolution of iron oxyhydroxide minerals under anoxic aquifer conditions, volcanic activity, and rock weathering processes (Smedley and Kinniburgh, 2002). The Bengal Basin, encompassing Bangladesh and the Indian state of West Bengal, represents the world's most extensively documented case of geogenic arsenic contamination, where an estimated 35 to 77 million people are exposed to arsenic concentrations exceeding the WHO guideline of 10 micrograms per liter in drinking water (Bhattacharya et al., 2007). Similar geogenic sources of arsenic contamination have been identified in aquifer systems across Argentina, Chile, Mexico, Vietnam, Cambodia, and China.

Beyond groundwater, geothermal waters, mineral-rich soils, and sedimentary deposits serve as natural reservoirs of arsenic that enter food chains through plant uptake, particularly in rice and root vegetables cultivated in arsenic-laden soils. Rice (Oryza sativa), a dietary staple for over half the global population, is uniquely susceptible to arsenic accumulation due to flooded paddy cultivation conditions that promote arsenite mobility, resulting in inorganic arsenic concentrations in polished rice ranging from 0.06 to 0.35 mg/kg across global samples (Zhao et al., 2010).

2.2 Anthropogenic Sources:

Human activities have substantially amplified environmental arsenic burdens beyond natural background levels. Historically, inorganic arsenical compounds including lead arsenate and calcium arsenate were extensively employed as pesticides and herbicides in agriculture, leaving

persistent soil contamination legacies in orchard lands and cotton fields (Peryea, 1998). The wood preservation industry utilized chromated copper arsenate as a preservative, resulting in arsenic leaching into adjacent soils and groundwater systems. Mining and smelting operations for gold, copper, and lead ores release arsenic-rich tailings and smelter emissions that contaminate surrounding terrestrial and aquatic environments.

In poultry and swine production, organoarsenic compounds such as roxarsone and arsanilic acid were historically used as growth promotants and coccidiostats. Although banned in several jurisdictions, their prior use introduced substantial arsenic into agricultural soils through manure application, creating a persistent contamination source for crop uptake and subsequent dietary exposure (Nachman et al., 2013). Industrial effluents from glass manufacturing, semiconductor production, and coal combustion also contribute to atmospheric and aquatic arsenic deposition.

2.3 Human Exposure Pathways and Toxicokinetics:

Human exposure to arsenic occurs through multiple pathways including ingestion of contaminated drinking water and food, inhalation of arsenic-laden dust and fumes, and dermal contact with arsenic-contaminated soils and surfaces. Dietary intake, particularly via contaminated groundwater used for drinking and cooking, and consumption of arsenic-accumulating foods including rice, wheat, seafood, and certain vegetables, represents the predominant exposure route globally (IARC, 2012). In the gastrointestinal tract, inorganic arsenate [As(V)] is absorbed by phosphate transporters, while arsenite [As(III)] enters cells via aquaglyceroporin channels, underscoring the dependence of arsenic uptake on speciation.

Once absorbed, arsenic undergoes hepatic biotransformation through sequential reduction and oxidative methylation reactions, generating monomethylarsonic acid (MMA) and dimethylarsinic acid (DMA) as primary metabolic products, which are then excreted in urine. However, a fraction of ingested arsenic transits the gastrointestinal tract without absorption, exposing the gut microbiome to potentially significant arsenic concentrations, particularly following dietary intake of rice and arsenic-contaminated vegetables. This direct luminal exposure establishes the mechanistic basis for arsenic-microbiome interactions in the gut environment (Lu et al., 2014).

3. THE GUT MICROBIOME: COMPOSITION, FUNCTION, AND SUSCEPTIBILITY TO ENVIRONMENTAL TOXICANTS:

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

3.1 Microbial Composition and Diversity:

The human gut microbiome is a complex, dynamic ecosystem harboring approximately 10 trillion microorganisms representing over 1,000 species, with a collective genome - the metagenome - encoding approximately 3.3 million unique genes, far exceeding the approximately 23,000 genes in the human genome (Qin et al., 2010). The bacterial component is dominated by two phyla: Firmicutes (including *Lactobacillus*, *Clostridium*, *Ruminococcus*, and *Faecalibacterium*) and Bacteroidetes (including Bacteroides and Prevotella), which together account for more than 90% of the gut bacterial community. Actinobacteria, Proteobacteria, and Verrucomicrobia constitute the remaining minority but play disproportionately important functional roles.

Gut microbial composition is shaped by a multitude of host and environmental factors including diet, geographic location, age, genetics, antibiotic use, and increasingly recognized environmental chemical exposures. The diversity of the gut microbiome, measured by metrics such as Shannon diversity index and observed species richness, is widely regarded as an indicator of ecosystem health and resilience; reduced diversity has been consistently associated with dysbiosis and disease susceptibility (Valles-Colomer et al., 2019). Perturbations by environmental toxicants, including heavy metals, can disrupt this diversity by selectively eliminating sensitive taxa while permitting expansion of metal-tolerant and potentially pathogenic species.

3.2 Metabolic and Immunological Functions:

The gut microbiome executes an extraordinary repertoire of metabolic functions essential to host physiology. Microbial fermentation of dietary fibre produces short-chain fatty acids (SCFAs) including acetate, propionate, and butyrate, which serve as primary energy substrates for colonocytes, regulate host immune responses, maintain intestinal barrier integrity, and modulate systemic metabolic processes (Koh et al., 2016). The microbiome also participates in synthesis of essential vitamins including B12, K2, and folate; biotransformation of bile acids with consequences for lipid metabolism and host signalling; and metabolism of dietary polyphenols into bioactive compounds with antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties.

Immunologically, the gut microbiome is indispensable for the education and calibration of both innate and adaptive immune systems. Commensal bacteria establish colonization resistance against pathogen invasion through competitive exclusion, nutrient depletion, and

direct antimicrobial peptide production. The gut-associated lymphoid tissue (GALT), which harbors approximately 70% of the body's immune cells, is continuously educated by microbial signals through pattern recognition receptors including Toll-like receptors (TLRs) and NOD-like receptors (NLRs), maintaining homeostatic immune tone (Hooper et al., 2012). Disruption of these microbial-immune interactions by arsenic-induced dysbiosis may therefore compromise host immunity alongside promoting AMR.

3.3 The Gut Resistome:

The gut resistome refers to the total collection of antimicrobial resistance genes harbored within the gut microbial community, encompassing both intrinsic resistance genes carried by commensal bacteria and acquired resistance genes introduced through horizontal gene transfer from environmental or pathogenic bacteria (Sommer et al., 2009). The gut resistome is vast and diverse, encoding resistance to virtually all known classes of antibiotics including beta-lactams, aminoglycosides, tetracyclines, macrolides, fluoroquinolones, and carbapenems. Critically, many resistance genes reside on mobile genetic elements (MGEs) including plasmids, transposons, integrons, and genomic islands, enabling their dissemination across taxonomically diverse gut microbial populations.

Environmental exposures that exert selective pressure on gut microbial communities can reshape the resistome profile, amplifying specific ARGs and facilitating their transfer to opportunistic pathogens. The gut thus functions as a critical hotspot for AMR evolution and dissemination, connecting environmental ARG reservoirs with human-adapted microbial communities. Understanding how environmental toxicants like arsenic modulate the gut resistome is therefore of paramount importance for predicting and mitigating the public health burden of AMR.

4. MECHANISMS OF ARSENIC-INDUCED ANTIMICROBIAL RESISTANCE IN THE GUT MICROBIOME:

4.1 Arsenic Resistance Operons and Co-selection:

Bacteria have evolved sophisticated genetic systems to tolerate arsenic toxicity, collectively encoded by arsenic resistance (ars) operons. The canonical ars operon comprises arsR (a transcriptional repressor sensing cytoplasmic arsenite), arsB (a membrane-bound arsenite efflux pump), and arsC (an arsenate reductase converting As(V) to As(III) for export). Extended ars operons may additionally encode arsA (a cytoplasmic ATPase enhancing arsB efflux activity), arsH (a NADPH-dependent flavoprotein with oxidoreductase activity), and arsM (an

arsenic methyltransferase facilitating volatilization) (Rosen, 2002). These operons are widely distributed across diverse bacterial taxa in the gut microbiome, reflecting the long evolutionary exposure of gut bacteria to environmental arsenic.

The critical mechanistic basis for arsenic-driven AMR co-selection lies in the frequent co-localization of ars operons and ARGs on the same mobile genetic elements. Metagenomic analyses and whole-genome sequencing of bacterial isolates from arsenic-contaminated environments and gut samples have revealed that ars genes frequently occur in physical proximity to multidrug efflux pump genes (including those of the RND, MFS, and SMR superfamilies), integron-associated ARGs, and class 1 integron gene cassettes that encode resistance to aminoglycosides, beta-lactams, and sulfonamides (Zhao et al., 2019). When arsenic exposure selects for retention of ars-carrying MGEs, the co-located ARGs are simultaneously enriched, conferring resistance to clinically important antibiotics without any direct antibiotic selective pressure.

4.2 Mobile Genetic Elements and Horizontal Gene Transfer:

Horizontal gene transfer (HGT), the non-vertical movement of genetic material between organisms, is the principal mechanism driving the rapid spread of ARGs across the gut microbiome. HGT occurs via conjugation (plasmid transfer through cell-to-cell contact), transformation (uptake of environmental DNA), and transduction (bacteriophage-mediated gene transfer). The gut environment, with its high cell density, diverse microbial community, and nutritional richness, is particularly conducive to HGT events, with conjugation rates in the gut estimated to be several orders of magnitude higher than in aquatic environments (Smillie et al., 2011).

Arsenic exposure has been demonstrated to enhance HGT efficiency through multiple mechanisms. Arsenic-induced membrane stress and DNA damage can increase cell membrane permeability, facilitating transformation and conjugation. Sub-lethal arsenic concentrations have been shown to upregulate SOS response genes, which in some bacteria transcriptionally activate conjugative transfer functions on plasmids, thereby increasing conjugation frequency (Beaber et al., 2004). Furthermore, the selective retention of arsenic-resistance plasmids under arsenic pressure increases the copy number of these plasmids relative to the chromosome, enhancing the probability of successful transfer to recipient cells. Integrons, mobile genetic platforms that capture and express gene cassettes, are frequently associated with arsenic

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

resistance operons and serve as ARG recruitment platforms in arsenic-exposed gut environments.

4.3 Arsenic-Induced Oxidative Stress and SOS Response Activation:

Arsenic exerts cytotoxicity largely through induction of oxidative stress. Inorganic arsenite inhibits thioredoxin reductase and glutathione reductase, key antioxidant enzymes, while simultaneously generating reactive oxygen species (ROS) including superoxide, hydrogen peroxide, and hydroxyl radicals through interaction with iron-sulfur clusters and Fenton-type chemistry (Kumagai and Sumi, 2007). The resulting oxidative DNA damage including 8-oxo-7,8-dihydroguanine, DNA strand breaks, and inter-strand crosslinks activates the bacterial SOS response, a global transcriptional program coordinating DNA repair and damage tolerance mechanisms.

SOS response activation has profound implications for AMR evolution. The SOS regulon in Escherichia coli and related Proteobacteria encompasses over 40 genes, including error-prone DNA polymerases (Pol IV encoded by dinB; Pol V encoded by umuDC) that generate mutations at elevated rates during DNA synthesis on damaged templates (Janion, 2008). This elevated mutagenesis accelerates the evolution of point mutations conferring antibiotic resistance in target genes such as gyrA mutations conferring fluoroquinolone resistance and rpsL mutations conferring aminoglycoside resistance. Additionally, SOS induction activates the excision and transpositional activity of transposons and integrative conjugative elements, further mobilizing ARGs within and between cells. Thus, arsenic-induced oxidative stress creates a mutagenic and gene transfer-permissive environment that accelerates AMR emergence and spread in the gut microbiome.

4.4 Efflux Pump Upregulation and Cross-Resistance:

Multidrug efflux pumps - membrane protein complexes that export diverse antimicrobial compounds from the bacterial cytoplasm - constitute one of the most clinically significant mechanisms of multidrug resistance. Several families of efflux pumps, including the Resistance-Nodulation-Division (RND) family exemplified by AcrAB-TolC in Enterobacteriaceae, the Major Facilitator Superfamily (MFS), and the Small Multidrug Resistance (SMR) family, export structurally diverse substrates including antibiotics, biocides, and heavy metals. This broad substrate specificity creates the molecular basis for cross-resistance between arsenic and antibiotics (Poole, 2017).

Arsenic exposure transcriptionally induces efflux pump expression through multiple regulatory pathways. Arsenite activates arsR repressor-mediated derepression of efflux genes and, through induction of oxidative stress, activates redox-responsive regulators such as OxyR and SoxRS in gram-negative bacteria, which in turn upregulate expression of AcrAB-TolC and related efflux systems. Since these efflux systems simultaneously export fluoroquinolones, tetracyclines, chloramphenicol, and beta-lactam antibiotics, arsenic-induced efflux pump upregulation confers broad-spectrum antibiotic resistance. This cross-resistance mechanism operates pre-adaptively, establishing multidrug resistance in gut microbial communities before clinical antibiotic exposure occurs.

5. METAGENOMIC EVIDENCE OF ARSENIC-DRIVEN RESISTANCE IN THE GUT MICROBIOME:

5.1 Functional Metagenomics and Resistome Profiling:

The advent of high-throughput sequencing technologies and metagenomic approaches has enabled comprehensive characterization of the gut resistome and its response to environmental perturbations without the requirement for bacterial cultivation. Shotgun metagenomics, coupled with bioinformatic annotation against curated ARG databases including the Comprehensive Antibiotic Resistance Database (CARD), NCBI's National Database of Antibiotic-Resistant Organisms (NDARO), and ResFinder, allows quantification and classification of ARGs in complex microbial communities (Alcock et al., 2020). Several landmark metagenomic studies have directly documented the association between arsenic exposure and gut resistome enrichment in human and animal populations.

Lu et al. (2014) conducted a pioneering metagenomic analysis of the gut microbiome in mice exposed to environmentally relevant arsenic concentrations in drinking water. This study demonstrated significant enrichment of functional pathways associated with arsenic resistance (arsB, arsC, arsR), multidrug efflux (mexB, acrB, smr), and integron-mediated gene transfer relative to unexposed controls. Critically, the arsenic-exposed metagenomes showed co-enrichment of ARGs targeting tetracyclines, aminoglycosides, and beta-lactams without any antibiotic administration, providing direct functional evidence for arsenic non-antibiotic co-selection of the gut resistome. These findings have since been corroborated by multiple independent studies in human populations from arsenic-endemic regions.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

5.2 Taxonomic Shifts and ARG-Carrying Populations:

Arsenic exposure induces reproducible compositional shifts in gut microbial communities, selectively enriching taxa with inherent arsenic tolerance while depleting arsenic-sensitive beneficial commensals. Studies in human populations chronically exposed to high arsenic in drinking water have documented increased relative abundance of Proteobacteria (particularly Gammaproteobacteria including Escherichia coli, Klebsiella, and Pseudomonas spp.) and reduced abundance of Firmicutes including Ruminococcaceae, Lachnospiraceae, and *Faecalibacterium prausnitzii* (Gokulan et al., 2018). This taxonomic shift is epidemiologically significant because Proteobacteria are the primary carriers of mobile ARGs including extended-spectrum beta-lactamase (ESBL) genes, carbapenemase genes, and colistin resistance genes, while the depleted Firmicutes taxa are important producers of butyrate with immunoprotective functions.

Network analyses of metagenomic datasets from arsenic-exposed populations consistently reveal strong positive co-occurrence patterns between arsenic resistance genes and diverse ARGs within the same microbial genomes and on the same plasmid sequences reconstructed from metagenomic assemblies. Specifically, arsB and arsC show significant genomic co-localization with tet(A), tet(B) (tetracycline resistance), aac(6')-Ib (aminoglycoside resistance), blaTEM (beta-lactam resistance), and qnrS (quinolone resistance) determinants, consistent with their co-residence on broad-host-range conjugative plasmids (Pal et al., 2015). These co-occurrence patterns strengthen the mechanistic evidence for arsenic co-selection as a driver of multidrug resistance dissemination in the human gut.

5.3 Dose-Response Relationships and Environmental Relevance:

A critical consideration in assessing the public health relevance of arsenic-driven AMR co-selection is whether effects are demonstrable at environmentally relevant arsenic concentrations rather than only at supratherapeutic doses. Several experimental studies have employed arsenic concentrations corresponding to WHO guideline values and realistic dietary exposure levels. Notably, mice exposed to arsenic at 10 ppb, equivalent to the WHO maximum contaminant level for drinking water, exhibited significant gut microbiome compositional shifts and ARG enrichment, demonstrating that co-selection can occur within the range of human environmental exposure (Lu et al., 2014). This finding substantially elevates the public health concern, as it implies that regulatory compliance with current arsenic standards may not protect against microbiome-mediated AMR enrichment.

Epidemiological evidence from populations in Bangladesh, India, and Chile further supports dose-response relationships between arsenic exposure biomarkers (urinary arsenic speciation) and the prevalence of antibiotic-resistant fecal bacteria, including ESBL-producing Enterobacteriaceae and multidrug-resistant Staphylococcus aureus (Patel et al., 2020). These human observational data, while subject to confounding by antibiotic use and dietary factors, align with experimental mechanistic evidence and support the biological plausibility of arsenic-driven AMR co-selection as a population-level phenomenon of genuine epidemiological significance.

6. PUBLIC HEALTH IMPLICATIONS:

6.1 Food Safety and Dietary Arsenic as an AMR Driver:

The recognition of dietary arsenic as a potential AMR co-selector has profound implications for food safety policy and risk assessment frameworks. Currently, regulatory standards for arsenic in food commodities, including the Codex Alimentarius maximum levels of 0.2 to 0.35 mg/kg for rice products and 0.01 mg/L for drinking water, are established solely on the basis of carcinogenic and systemic toxicity endpoints, without consideration of AMR co-selection as an adverse effect criterion (Codex Alimentarius Commission, 2014). Integration of AMR co-selection into food safety risk assessments would necessitate re-evaluation of existing maximum residue limits and potentially require more stringent regulatory standards.

The use of arsenic-containing animal feed additives, while now banned in the European Union and under regulatory restriction in the United States, continues in several low- and middle-income countries. Arsenic excreted in manure from treated animals enters agricultural soils and irrigation water systems, creating a diffuse source of arsenic contamination with potential to drive ARG co-selection in soil microbial communities and subsequently in the gut microbiomes of individuals consuming arsenic-contaminated agricultural products (Nachman et al., 2013). Harmonization of global regulations on arsenic-containing veterinary pharmaceuticals is therefore necessary to address this often-overlooked AMR co-selection pathway.

6.2 Clinical Consequences of Arsenic-Enriched Gut Resistome:

The clinical implications of arsenic-driven gut resistome enrichment manifest at the individual and population levels through several interconnected pathways. At the individual level, hospitalized patients originating from arsenic-endemic regions may carry highly enriched gut resistomes that complicate treatment of healthcare-associated infections, as gut-resident ARG-

carrying organisms are a major source of nosocomial pathogens including Klebsiella pneumoniae, Escherichia coli, and Enterococcus species (Cassini et al., 2019). The importation of arsenic-enriched gut resistomes into healthcare settings through patient migration represents an underappreciated pathway for resistance gene introduction into clinical environments.

At the population level, communities with endemic arsenic exposure face a dual burden: the direct carcinogenic and systemic health consequences of arsenic toxicity combined with increased vulnerability to treatment-refractory infections facilitated by the enriched gut resistome. This interaction may exacerbate health inequities in low-resource settings where both arsenic contamination and inadequate healthcare infrastructure coexist. Prospective epidemiological studies examining infection outcomes and antibiotic treatment failure rates in arsenic-exposed versus unexposed populations are urgently needed to quantify this clinical burden.

6.3 One Health Framework and Intersectoral Surveillance:

The One Health concept, which recognizes the inextricable interconnection of human, animal, and environmental health, provides the most appropriate framework for addressing arsenic-driven AMR co-selection as a multidimensional challenge. Under this framework, arsenic-driven AMR must be managed through coordinated action spanning environmental monitoring of arsenic in water, soil, and food; surveillance of ARG prevalence in agricultural environments, animal production systems, and human gut microbiomes; and policy interventions addressing arsenic use in agriculture and industry (WHO, FAO, OIE, 2020).

Integration of AMR surveillance with environmental contamination monitoring is currently nascent, with most national AMR action plans focusing exclusively on clinical antimicrobial use as the primary driver. Expanding surveillance frameworks to include environmental chemical co-selectors, with arsenic as a priority target given its global prevalence and mechanistic evidence, represents a critical gap in current global AMR governance. International coordination through platforms including the Global AMR R&D Hub, the Tripartite AMR Country Self-Assessment Survey, and the WHO Global Action Plan on AMR is essential for developing harmonized surveillance protocols and response strategies.

7. FUTURE RESEARCH DIRECTIONS AND MITIGATION STRATEGIES:

7.1 Research Priorities and Knowledge Gaps:

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Despite compelling mechanistic and epidemiological evidence, several critical knowledge gaps remain that limit the translation of current understanding into effective public health interventions. Longitudinal human cohort studies examining the temporal dynamics of gut resistome enrichment in relation to arsenic exposure biomarkers and subsequent infection outcomes are largely absent from the literature. Such studies would enable quantitative estimation of the attributable fraction of clinical AMR burden arising from environmental arsenic co-selection, a figure essential for prioritizing regulatory and public health responses. Additionally, the relative contribution of arsenic co-selection to gut resistome enrichment compared to other drivers including dietary antibiotic residues, antibiotic therapy, and other metal contaminants requires systematic quantitative assessment through controlled experimental designs.

The molecular mechanisms underlying arsenic-ARG co-localization on mobile genetic elements, including the evolutionary forces driving assembly and maintenance of metal-antibiotic resistance co-resistance elements, remain incompletely understood. Functional genomic approaches including transposon insertion sequencing (Tn-seq), chromatin immunoprecipitation sequencing (ChIP-seq), and advanced metagenome-assembled genome (MAG) reconstruction offer powerful tools for dissecting these mechanisms in complex gut microbial communities. Furthermore, the role of the virome, particularly bacteriophages mediating transduction of arsenic and antibiotic co-resistance genes in gut resistome dynamics under arsenic exposure, has received minimal investigation and warrants dedicated study.

7.2 Dietary and Microbiome-Based Mitigation Strategies:

Dietary modification represents an accessible and immediate strategy for reducing arsenic-driven AMR co-selection risk at the individual level. Diversification of staple grain intake to reduce dependence on arsenic-accumulating rice varieties, adoption of post-harvest arsenic removal processing methods including soaking and parboiling, and substitution of arsenic-contaminated groundwater with safer surface water sources can collectively reduce dietary arsenic exposure by 30 to 60% in endemic populations (Raab et al., 2009). Development and promotion of low-arsenic rice varieties through plant breeding and genetic modification programs further contribute to population-level exposure reduction.

Probiotic and prebiotic interventions targeting the gut microbiome represent emerging strategies for counteracting arsenic-induced dysbiosis and resistome enrichment. Lactobacillus and Bifidobacterium species with arsenic biosorption and biotransformation capabilities have

demonstrated potential to reduce intestinal arsenic bioavailability in animal models (Monachese et al., 2012). Dietary fibers promoting SCFA production and Firmicutes abundance may partially counteract arsenic-induced Proteobacteria enrichment and associated ARG co-selection. While clinical evidence remains limited, these microbiome-directed approaches represent promising complementary strategies warranting rigorous clinical evaluation in arsenic-exposed populations.

7.3 Environmental Remediation and Policy Interventions:

Addressing arsenic contamination at its environmental source through remediation and pollution control represents the most fundamental and sustainable mitigation strategy. Affordable and scalable point-of-use arsenic removal technologies including granular ferric hydroxide (GFH) filters, community-level reverse osmosis systems, and electrocoagulation units have demonstrated efficacy in reducing arsenic concentrations in drinking water to below WHO guideline levels in field trials across South Asia and Latin America (Ahmed et al., 2006). However, ensuring equitable access to these technologies in rural and economically marginalized communities where arsenic contamination and AMR burden are most severe requires sustained policy commitment and international development financing.

Regulatory frameworks governing industrial and agricultural arsenic emissions require strengthening and enforcement, particularly in rapidly industrializing nations. Harmonization of global maximum contaminant levels for arsenic in drinking water and food commodities, with explicit consideration of non-carcinogenic endpoints including AMR co-selection, is needed within Codex Alimentarius and WHO guideline revision processes. Incentive structures supporting arsenic-free mining and smelting practices, elimination of organoarsenic veterinary pharmaceutical residues, and remediation of legacy contaminated sites should be integrated into national AMR action plans as priority environmental health interventions.

8. CONCLUSION:

Arsenic, as a globally pervasive environmental pollutant, represents a critically important but insufficiently recognized driver of antimicrobial resistance in the human gut microbiome. Through the dual mechanisms of co-selection, where arsenic resistance genes and ARGs physically co-locate on the same mobile genetic elements, and indirect mechanisms including oxidative stress-driven SOS mutagenesis, enhanced horizontal gene transfer, and multidrug efflux pump upregulation, arsenic exposure reshapes the gut resistome toward multidrug resistance even in the complete absence of antibiotic selective pressure. Metagenomic evidence

from both animal models and human populations in arsenic-endemic regions consistently documents resistance gene enrichment and taxonomic shifts favoring ARG-carrying Proteobacteria following arsenic exposure at environmentally relevant concentrations.

The public health implications of these findings are profound. Billions of people globally are exposed to arsenic concentrations at or above WHO guideline levels through contaminated drinking water, rice consumption, and other dietary pathways, while existing food safety and water quality risk frameworks do not account for AMR co-selection as an adverse outcome. The One Health paradigm provides the optimal framework for addressing this challenge, necessitating coordinated surveillance, regulatory reform, research investment, and environmental remediation efforts spanning human medicine, veterinary science, agriculture, and environmental governance.

Future research must prioritize longitudinal epidemiological studies linking arsenic biomarkers to clinical AMR outcomes, functional metagenomic investigations of co-selection mechanisms, and clinical trials evaluating dietary and microbiome-based mitigation strategies. Critically, global AMR governance frameworks must evolve to explicitly incorporate environmental chemical co-selectors, with arsenic as a priority target, into AMR action plans and surveillance systems. Only through such integrated, multi-disciplinary, and multi-sectoral approaches can the compounding threats of arsenic contamination and antimicrobial resistance be effectively mitigated, protecting the health of current and future generations worldwide.

REFERENCES:

Ahmed, M. F., Ahuja, S., Alauddin, M., Hug, S. J., Lloyd, J. R., Pfaff, A., Pichler, T., Saltikov, C., Stute, M., & Van Geen, A. (2006). Ensuring safe drinking water in Bangladesh. Science, 314(5806), 1687-1688. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1133146

Alcock, B. P., Raphenya, A. R., Lau, T. T. Y., Tsang, K. K., Bouchard, M., Edalatmand, A., Huynh, W., Nguyen, A. L. V., Cheng, A. A., Liu, S., Min, S. Y., Miroshnichenko, A., Tran, H. K., Werfalli, R. E., Ciota, J. A., Dias, M., Gaudet, M., Laboy, V. A., & McArthur, A. G. (2020). CARD 2020: Antibiotic resistome surveillance with the Comprehensive Antibiotic Resistance Database. Nucleic Acids Research, 48(D1), D517-D525. https://doi.org/10.1093/nar/gkz935

Baker-Austin, C., Wright, M. S., Stepanauskas, R., & McArthur, J. V. (2006). Co-selection of antibiotic and metal resistance. Trends in Microbiology, 14(4), 176-182. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tim.2006.02.006

Beaber, J. W., Hochhut, B., & Waldor, M. K. (2004). SOS response promotes horizontal dissemination of antibiotic resistance genes. Nature, 427(6969), 72-74. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature02241

Bhattacharya, P., Mukherjee, A. B., Jacks, G., & Nordqvist, S. (2007). Metal contamination at mine sites. Applied Geochemistry, 22(5), 895-897.

Cassini, A., Hogberg, L. D., Plachouras, D., Quattrocchi, A., Hoxha, A., Simonsen, G. S., Colomb-Cotinat, M., Kretzschmar, M. E., Devleesschauwer, B., Cecchini, M., Ouakrim, D. A., Oliveira, T. C., Struelens, M. J., Suetens, C., Monnet, D. L., & Burden of AMR Collaborative Group. (2019). Attributable deaths and disability-adjusted life-years caused by infections with antibiotic-resistant bacteria in the EU and the European Economic Area in 2015: A population-level modelling analysis. The Lancet Infectious Diseases, 19(1), 56-66. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1473-3099(18)30605-4

Clemente, J. C., Ursell, L. K., Parfrey, L. W., & Knight, R. (2012). The impact of the gut microbiota on human health: An integrative view. Cell, 148(6), 1258-1270. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2012.01.035

Codex Alimentarius Commission. (2014). Maximum levels for arsenic in food. CAC/GL 73-2010. Food and Agriculture Organization; World Health Organization.

Gokulan, K., Arnold, M. G., Jensen, J., Vanlandingham, M., Twaddle, N. C., Doerge, D. R., Cerniglia, C. E., & Khare, S. (2018). Exposure to arsenite in CD-1 mice during juvenile and adult stages: Effects on intestinal microbiota and gut-associated immune status. mBio, 9(2), e01815-17. https://doi.org/10.1128/mBio.01815-17

Hooper, L. V., Littman, D. R., & Macpherson, A. J. (2012). Interactions between the microbiota and the immune system. Science, 336(6086), 1268-1273. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1223490

IARC. (2012). Arsenic, metals, fibres, and dusts: A review of human carcinogens (IARC Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans, Vol. 100C). International Agency for Research on Cancer.

Janion, C. (2008). Inducible SOS response system of DNA repair and mutagenesis in Escherichia coli. International Journal of Biological Sciences, 4(6), 338-344. https://doi.org/10.7150/ijbs.4.338

Koh, A., De Vadder, F., Kovatcheva-Datchary, P., & Backhed, F. (2016). From dietary fiber to host physiology: Short-chain fatty acids as key bacterial metabolites. Cell, 165(6), 1332-1345. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.cell.2016.05.041

Kumagai, Y., & Sumi, D. (2007). Arsenic: Signal transduction, transcription factor, and biotransformation involved in cellular response and toxicity. Annual Review of Pharmacology and Toxicology, 47, 243-262. https://doi.org/10.1146/annurev.pharmtox.47.120505.105144

Lu, K., Abo, R. P., Schlieper, K. A., Graffam, M. E., Levine, S., Wishnok, J. S., Swenberg, J. A., Tannenbaum, S. R., & Fox, J. G. (2014). Arsenic exposure perturbs the gut microbiome and its metabolic profile in mice: An integrated metagenomics and metabolomics analysis. Environmental Health Perspectives, 122(3), 284-291. https://doi.org/10.1289/ehp.1307429

Monachese, M., Burton, J. P., & Reid, G. (2012). Bioremediation and tolerance of humans to heavy metals through microbial processes: A potential role for probiotics? Applied and Environmental Microbiology, 78(18), 6397-6404. https://doi.org/10.1128/AEM.01665-12

Nachman, K. E., Baron, P. A., Raber, G., Francesconi, K. A., Navas-Acien, A., & Love, D. C. (2013). Roxarsone, inorganic arsenic, and other arsenic species in chicken: A US-based market basket sample. Environmental Health Perspectives, 121(7), 818-824. https://doi.org/10.1289/ehp.1206245

Pal, C., Bengtsson-Palme, J., Kristiansson, E., & Larsson, D. G. J. (2015). Co-occurrence of resistance genes to antibiotics, biocides and metals reveals novel insights into their co-selection potential. BMC Genomics, 16, 964. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12864-015-2153-5

Patel, P., Baxi, D., Parmar, A., & Verma, R. J. (2020). Arsenic and antimicrobial resistance: An epidemiological perspective. Journal of Trace Elements in Medicine and Biology, 62, 126619. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jtemb.2020.126619

Peryea, F. J. (1998). Historical use of lead arsenate insecticides, resulting in soil contamination and subsequent crop nutrient impacts. In Proceedings of the 16th World Congress of Soil Science. International Society of Soil Science.

Poole, K. (2017). At the nexus of antibiotics and metals: The impact of Cu and Zn on antibiotic activity and resistance. Trends in Microbiology, 25(10), 820-832. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tim.2017.04.010

Qin, J., Li, R., Raes, J., Arumugam, M., Burgdorf, K. S., Manichanh, C., Nielsen, T., Pons, N., Levenez, F., Yamada, T., Mende, D. R., Li, J., Xu, J., Li, S., Li, D., Cao, J., Wang, B., Liang, H., Zheng, H., & Wang, J. (2010). A human gut microbial gene catalogue

established by metagenomic sequencing. Nature, 464(7285), 59-65. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature08821

Raab, A., Baskaran, C., Feldmann, J., & Meharg, A. A. (2009). Cooking rice in a high water to rice ratio reduces inorganic arsenic content. Journal of Environmental Monitoring, 11(1), 41-44. https://doi.org/10.1039/B816906E

Rosen, B. P. (2002). Biochemistry of arsenic detoxification. FEBS Letters, 529(1), 86-92. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0014-5793(02)03186-1

Smillie, C. S., Smith, M. B., Friedman, J., Cordero, O. X., David, L. A., & Alm, E. J. (2011). Ecology drives a global network of gene exchange connecting the human microbiome. Nature, 480(7376), 241-244. https://doi.org/10.1038/nature10571

Smedley, P. L., & Kinniburgh, D. G. (2002). A review of the source, behaviour and distribution of arsenic in natural waters. Applied Geochemistry, 17(5), 517-568. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0883-2927(02)00018-5

Sommer, M. O. A., Dantas, G., & Church, G. M. (2009). Functional characterization of the antibiotic resistance reservoir in the human microflora. Science, 325(5944), 1128-1131. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1176950

Valles-Colomer, M., Falony, G., Darzi, Y., Tigchelaar, E. F., Wang, J., Tito, R. Y., Schiweck, C., Kurilshikov, A., Joossens, M., Wijmenga, C., Claes, S., Van Oudenhove, L., Zhernakova, A., Vieira-Silva, S., & Raes, J. (2019). The neuroactive potential of the human gut microbiota in quality of life and depression. Nature Microbiology, 4(4), 623-632. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41564-018-0337-x

WHO. (2019). No time to wait: Securing the future from drug-resistant infections. World Health Organization.

WHO, FAO, & OIE. (2020). Antimicrobial resistance: A manual for developing national action plans. World Health Organization.

Zhao, F. J., Ma, J. F., Meharg, A. A., & McGrath, S. P. (2009). Arsenic uptake and metabolism in plants. New Phytologist, 181(4), 777-794. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1469-8137.2008.02716.x

Zhao, Y., Su, J. Q., An, X. L., Huang, F. Y., Rensing, C., Brandt, K. K., & Zhu, Y. G. (2019). Feed additives shift gut microbiota and enrich antibiotic resistance in swine gut. Science of the Total Environment, 621, 1224-1232. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2017.10.106

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Chapter 6

Neuroprotective Potential of Progesterone and Estrogen: A Newer Deep-Down Investigation to Mitigate Neurodegenerative Diseases

Sweta Thakur, Subhasis Sarkar, Bidisha Ghosh

[1] *Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata-700121*

[2] *Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata-700121*

**Corresponding Author's Email ID: bidishag@svu.ac.in*

ABSTRACT

Neurodegenerative disorders such as Alzheimer's disease (AD) and Parkinson's disease (PD) are major global health concerns, particularly affecting the elderly. These conditions are distinguished by increasing neuronal loss, mitochondrial dysfunction, oxidative stress, and weakened DNA repair systems. Despite substantial study, most available medicines merely treat symptoms rather than reversing disease progression, owing to the blood-brain barrier's restrictive nature. Emerging data suggests that female steroid hormones, notably estrogen and progesterone, can help maintain neuronal integrity, modulate mitochondrial activity, and reduce oxidative and inflammatory stress. Estrogen has been proven to improve mitochondrial biogenesis, upregulate DNA repair enzymes, and regulate apoptotic signals, ultimately promoting neuronal survival. Similarly, progesterone has powerful neuroprotective effects via antioxidant processes, anti-inflammatory regulation, and the stimulation of neurotrophic factors like BDNF and NGF. It also enhances myelination, synaptic plasticity, and neural resilience in Alzheimer's and Parkinson's disease models. The hormone's ability to divert amyloid precursor protein (APP) processing to non-amyloidogenic pathways highlights its therapeutic potential in Alzheimer's disease pathology. Furthermore, sex-based differences in PD incidence and illness onset highlight the importance of hormone protection in neurodegeneration. Current research suggests that sex hormones, notably progesterone, play an important multifaceted role in reducing neuronal impairment, implying that hormone-based therapies could provide new therapeutic pathways for neurodegenerative illnesses.

Keywords: Antioxidant processes, Anti-inflammatory regulation, Alzheimer's disease, Estrogen, Neurodegenerative Diseases, Neuroprotective effects, Parkinson's disease, Progesterone

---

1. INTRODUCTION:

Neurodegenerative diseases are characterized by the loss of neurons. Among neurodegenerative diseases, Alzheimer's and Parkinson's are among the most prevalent. The great majority of medications now approved for the treatment of neurodegenerative disorders only treat the symptoms. The blood–brain barrier (BBB), which prevents more than 99% of all "foreign substances" from entering the brain, is the main cause of the dearth of pathogenesis-targeting treatments, even though several drugs are currently approved for the treatment of neurodegenerative diseases. The BBB got its name from the wall separating the two blood arteries that carry blood to the brain. The pathophysiology of Parkinson's and Alzheimer's diseases, as well as the current treatment approaches for each of these ailments, are briefly discussed (Keservani., 2023). Life expectancy has increased by six years during the last three decades, indicating that the world's population is aging. With 22% of the population predicted to be over 60 by 2050, age-related illnesses, particularly dementia, are predicted to rise. Neurodegenerative diseases, especially dementia, are leading causes of death in Western nations, according to the WHO. Alzheimer's disease is responsible for 60–70% of dementia cases, and neurological diseases affect more than 20% of persons 60 and older. There are about 47 million dementia sufferers, and 10 million new cases are reported each year. It is anticipated that this figure would rise to 132 million by 2050 and 75 million by 2030. Although lifestyle factors play a role, the most significant risk factor is still age (World Health Statistic, 2017).A gradual deterioration in physiological function and heightened vulnerability to illness are hallmarks of aging, an unavoidable biological process. All tissues suffer from the negative consequences of aging, but the brain is the most significant because of its central function in maintaining the body's homeostasis. Potential methods to maintain brain function greatly expand as we learn more about the fundamental processes behind brain aging. A growing body of research indicates that aging may be influenced by a loss of genomic maintenance, particularly in the central nervous system (CNS), which has a limited ability for DNA repair. Strong antioxidants, sex hormones- especially estrogens- are essential for preserving both normal reproductive and non-reproductive processes. Their depletion with aging and either natural or surgical menopause is linked to neuroinflammation, mitochondrial malfunction,

synaptic degeneration, cognitive impairment, and an elevated risk of age-related diseases. They also have neuroprotective effects. Furthermore, it has been proposed that sex hormone deficiency accelerates the aging process, which in turn causes brain hypometabolism, a characteristic frequently seen in menopausal women and prodromal Alzheimer's disease (AD). Numerous studies have connected sex hormone levels with distinct DNA repair enzymes, despite the fact that there is currently little information on the relationship between sex hormones and DNA repair mechanisms in the brain (Zárate et al., 2017).The steroid hormones progesterone and estrogen affect the brain, heart, and bones, among other organ systems. Regarding the latter, there is a substantial body of fundamental science research that substantiates the neuroprotective function of progesterone and/or estrogen. Indeed, these research' findings led to the evaluation of these hormones as potential preventative measures against conditions like traumatic brain injury, Parkinson's disease, Alzheimer's disease, and stroke.It's interesting to note that data from in vitro and in vivo models seemed to contradict findings from the Women's Health Initiative (WHI). Nonetheless, it was maintained that the findings from the basic science research supported—and possibly even predicted—the findings from the WHI rather than contradicting the clinical trials. To demonstrate this, some examine specific in vivo models that have been employed to evaluate the protective effects of progesterone and estrogens, and explain how the findings from these animal models highlight the significance of the hormone type, subject age, and hormone administration technique in determining whether or not hormones are neuroprotective (Singh et al., 2008).

2. MECHANISMS OF ACTION IN THE BRAIN / SEX HORMONES: THE BRAIN'S MECHANISM OF ACTION:

Sex steroids work in a similar way to other steroid hormones, attaching to nuclear receptors that function as ligand-dependent transcription factors to control target gene expression (McDevitt et al.,2008). Two traditional receptors for estrogens, ERα and ERβ, have been identified. But in recent years, it has become clear that membrane-associated ER and other proteins unrelated to ERs- such as membrane G protein-coupled ER 1 (GPER1)- also cause estrogen responses (Nilsson et al., 2001; Zárate and Seilicovich, 2010; Rettberg et al., 2014).Our knowledge of how sex hormones impact mood, cardiovascular regulation, fine motor skills, neuroprotection, and higher cognitive functions is further complicated by this (Dumitriu et al., 2010; Hara et al., 2015). Additionally, the sites of classical and non-classical androgen and progestin receptors as well as their nuclear and non-nuclear forms have been identified (McLachlan et al., 1991; Brinton et al., 2008; Sarkey et al., 2008; Petersen et al.,

2013; Li et al., 2015).Sex hormone receptors are found throughout the brain and in both nuclear and non-nuclear compartments, such as mitochondria, in addition to being strongly expressed in areas linked to neuroendocrine function and reproductive behavior, such as the hypothalamus (Kelly and Levin, 2001; Boulware et al., 2007; Psarra and Sekeris, 2008; Simpkins et al., 2008; Rettberg et al., 2014; McEwen and Milner, 2017).Given the intricacy of the brain, sex hormones affect a wide range of cellular targets, influencing a significant number of physiological processes in addition to neuronal function. Thus, it has been reported that oligodendrocyte maturation and proliferation, as well as local inflammatory processes mediated by microglia and astrocytes, are regulated by estrogen and progesterone. Sex hormones have also been shown to have a significant impact on the cerebral vasculature in various animal models of brain damage. Both smooth muscle cells and endothelial cells have been found to contain ERs (Marin-Husstege et al., 2004; Ghoumari et al., 2005; Arevalo et al., 2010; Stirone et al., 2003). Estrogens protect against stroke by influencing the cerebral vasculature, lowering leukocyte adhesion, inhibiting inflammatory indicators like COX-2, and raising endothelial nitric oxide synthase activity. The angiogenic activity of endothelial progenitor cells has also been shown to be enhanced by progesterone in a rat model of traumatic brain injury (Suzuki et al., 2009; Yu et al., 2017).

The way that mitochondria work is also significantly impacted by estrogen. It is not entirely clear how estrogen controls mitochondrial activity, however both direct and indirect effects have been identified as contributing to this regulation (Klinge.,2017).

The positive effects of estrogen on mitochondria are particularly significant in organs with high energy demands, such as the central nervous system. Estrogen regulates metabolism as well as several aspects of mitochondrial function in neural tissues, such as biogenesis, apoptosis, and even shape (Brinton, 2008; Klinge, 2017, Kemper et al., 2014, Garcia-Segura et al., 1998; Nilsen and Diaz Brinton, 2003; Mo et al., 2013, Arnold et al., 2008; Hara et al., 2014). The presence of ERs in mitochondria appears to be cell-type specific and mediates many of the activities of estrogen in these organelles. Regarding the brain, it has been proposed that mitochondrial ERs are found in rat hippocampus neurons and glia, primary cultured rat neurons, murine hippocampus cell lines, and pre- and post-synaptic mitochondria of hippocampus neurons (Yang et al., 2004; Milner et al., 2005; Herrick et al., 2006; Milner et al., 2008).The existence of ERs in mitochondria raises the possibility that estrogen may directly influence the transcription of mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) to modify mitochondrial function. Indeed, it has been reported that mitochondrial ERβ binds to mtDNA sequences that resemble estrogen response elements (Demonacos et al., 1996; Chen et al., 2004). However, this pathway

is not the only way that estrogen affects mitochondria. Through the typical nuclear mechanism-that is, the transcriptional regulation of nuclear-encoded mitochondrial proteins- estrogen also controls mitochondrial activities. Estrogen is known to control the nuclear transcription of several proteins that impact mitochondrial function, including peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-gamma coactivator 1 (PCG-1) and nuclear respiratory factor-1 (NRF-1) (Kemper et al., 2013; Klinge, 2017). Therefore, the activation of nuclear genes that encode proteins involved in mitochondrial biogenesis and the complexes of the mitochondrial electron transport chain depends on this control (Scarpulla, 2008; Klinge, 2017).The transcription of mitochondrial transcription factor A (TFAM), which enters mitochondria and starts mtDNA transcription and replication, is also regulated; (Virbasius and Scarpulla, 1994; Kang et al., 2007). Estrogen's effects on mitochondria may be particularly significant in the brain because mtDNA mutation accumulation and the resulting mitochondrial malfunction have been implicated as key factors in the aging process of the brain and the development of neurological diseases (Barja, 2004; Cantuti-Castelvetri et al., 2005; Kujoth et al., 2007).Accordingly, the brain experiences elevated levels of oxidative alterations and mtDNA mutations throughout normal aging, and these levels are exacerbated in neurodegenerative illnesses like AD and PD (Melov, 2004; Beal, 2005; Vermulst et al., 2007;Gabbita et al., 1998; Sanders et al., 2014).The reduction in mtDNA repair capability is one of the primary causes of mtDNA instability in neurodegenerative illnesses as well as throughout brain aging (Imam et al., 2006; Weissman et al., 2007a; Gredilla, 2010; Gredilla et al., 2012).Both the nucleus and the mitochondria have been shown to have distinct DNA repair mechanisms. The four main ones are double-strand break repair, nucleotide excision repair (NER), mismatch repair (MMR), and base excision repair (BER). Repairing mtDNA changes brought on by alkylation, deamination, and oxidation is the primary function of the BER pathway in mitochondria (Gredilla et al., 2010a; Jeppesen et al., 2011).

3. NEUROPROTECTION BY ESTROGEN:

Clinical and experimental evidence points to the preventive role of estrogens against neurodegenerative illnesses (Kumar et al., 2010; Vail and Roepke, 2019). Premature menopausal women under 40 who did not undergo estrogen therapy do, in fact, have a higher chance of developing cardiovascular and neurological diseases, which are linked to a higher death rate (Shuster et al., 2010). According to a recent meta-analysis that incorporated epidemiological research on the impact of hormone replacement therapy (HRT) on Parkinson's

and Alzheimer's disease, postmenopausal women benefit greatly from this kind of treatment (Song et al., 2020).

3.1 Alzheimer's Disease (AD):

AD is a progressive neurodegenerative disease that impairs patients' memory and cognition by causing the irreversible loss of hippocampus cells (Dubois et al., 2016).It's interesting to note that postmenopausal women experience a higher prevalence of this illness than males do, along with a quicker decrease in cognition, suggesting that sex hormones may play a part in the development of AD (Li and Singh, 2014; Zagni et al., 2016).These results are consistent with the idea that altered β-amyloid deposition can inhibit aromatase, an enzyme that is essential for the conversion of androgens into estrogens (McCullough et al., 2003; Overk et al., 2012).Conversely, HRT reduces the risk of AD and delays the deterioration of cognitive abilities in AD patients (Yaffe et al., 2000).Several scenarios can be used to explain the beneficial effects of estrogens in AD. A steady decrease in the quantity and maturity of adult neurons in the hippocampus's dentate gyrus (DG) is a hallmark of AD. This suggests that hippocampal neurogenesis is impaired, which is directly linked to cognitive decline and the loss of hippocampal functions (Moreno-Jimenez et al., 2019; Hollands et al., 2017; Morello et al., 2018). It has been proposed that neurogenesis improves memory and averts cognitive deterioration because it appears to be essential for maintaining cognitive processes. Accordingly, estrogen therapy seems to increase the amount of cells and synaptic biomarkers that proliferate in the hippocampus, while also increasing the proliferation of NSPCs in the DG (Dorostkar et al., 2015; Fahnestock et al., 2002; Sopova et al., 2014).Additionally, estrogens promote the growth of NSPCs in pathological settings, lowering oxidative stress and apoptotic levels and enhancing memory and cognitive function (Correia et al., 2010; Anastasio, 2013; Vaucher et al., 2002; Shohayeb et al., 2018).Two frequent features of AD animal models and AD patients include mitochondrial failure and an excess of reactive oxygen species (ROS), similar to those seen in OVX or elderly rats (Starkov, 2008).Estrogens' anti-apoptotic effects in AD are linked to the pro-apoptotic protein Bax being negatively regulated and the anti-apoptotic protein Bcl-2 being positively modulated (Green et al., 1997; Pike et al., 2009; Correia et al., 2010). This is why it was recently found that estrogens increase the production of miR-125b, a miRNA that inhibits the expression of the pro-apoptotic genes p53 and Bak1(Micheli et al., 2016; Amakiri et al., 2019).Furthermore, by stimulating the BDNF gene and its downstream pathways, estrogen can improve survival by affecting processes like

spinogenesis and neurite outgrowth, which in turn can improve memory and cognitive function (Gibbs, 1998; Bhattacherjee et al., 2014).

3.2 Parkinson's Disease (PD):

There may be a role for this sex hormone in the pathophysiology of Parkinson's disease (PD) as clinical evidence suggests that women with low estrogen exposure may acquire PD earlier than women with high estrogen exposure (Ragonese et al., 2004).In this regard, estrogens also seem to play a protective function in the course of Parkinson's disease and the effectiveness of treatment (Saunders-Pullman et al., 1999; Shulman, 2002; Jin, 2020).By decreasing the expression of catechol-O-methyltransferase (COMT), the enzyme that breaks down dopamine, estrogens may have a beneficial effect on dopamine neurotransmission (Jiang et al., 2003) . In this way, HRT seems to increase the effectiveness of levodopa, the most widely used anti-parkinsonian medication, by lowering its reaction threshold and raising its sensitivity (Gomez-Mancilla and Bedard, 1992; Tsang et al., 2000; Yadav et al., 2017). Furthermore, as shown in dopaminergic cells in mesencephalic slice cultures, the protective effects of estrogens in Parkinson's disease (PD) are linked to the activation of the mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) signalling pathway and the ensuing overexpression of Bcl-2 (Wang et al., 2011). Additionally, estrogen can promote the production and overexpression of BDNF and dopamine transporter (DAT) in midbrain dopaminergic cells via acting on the PI3K/Akt pathway (Yi et al., 2016). As was previously mentioned, BDNF promotes survival and improves synaptic transmission and plasticity in a neuroprotective manner. Furthermore, it seems that estrogen supplementation can protect PD brains from oxidative damage (Numakawa et al., 2011; Jin, 2020).

4. Neuroprotection by progesterone:

4.1 Alzheimer disease:

A strong neuroprotective steroid with several pathways related to the development and prevention of Alzheimer's disease (AD), progesterone has gained popularity. Progesterone can prevent energy failure and neuronal death by reducing oxidative stress, preserving mitochondrial activity in hippocampus and cortical neurons, and attenuating β-amyloid (Aβ)-induced neurotoxicity, according to experimental investigations (Goodman et al.,1996; Singh, 2001).It promotes overall neuronal survival by preventing caspase-3-mediated apoptosis and preserving the integrity of the mitochondrial membrane (Roof & Hall, 2000).Progesterone therapy has been linked in mouse models to improved myelination and synaptic plasticity,

which are linked to better learning and spatial memory-functions that are generally compromised in AD (Brinton, 1994; Stein, 2001).By lowering microglial activation and inhibiting pro-inflammatory cytokines like TNF-α and IL-18, the hormone also has strong anti-inflammatory effects, minimizing neuroinflammatory damage in AD-related pathologies(Kipp et al., 2006).Additionally, by upregulating nerve growth factor (NGF) and brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF), two important mediators of synapse repair and neuronal maintenance, progesterone encourages neurotrophic support(Gibbs, 1998. Modulation of amyloid precursor protein (APP) processing is another neuroprotective mechanism. Progesterone reduces Aβ buildup by reorienting the cleavage pathway toward the non-amyloidogenic path (Nilsen & Brinton, 2003). It's interesting to note that while prolonged exposure to estrogen might negate its positive effects on synaptic proteins and neurotrophin production, cyclic co-administration of progesterone maintains these effects (Brinton et al.,2000). According to the "critical window hypothesis," progesterone-based hormone therapy started early has greater neuroprotective benefits than treatment started later after menopause(Sherwin,2003).These results collectively imply that progesterone counteracts the oxidative, inflammatory, and apoptotic pathways that contribute to the pathophysiology of Alzheimer's disease in a multifactorial and time-sensitive manner.

4.2 Parkinson's Disease (PD):

The second most prevalent neurodegenerative condition is Parkinson's disease (PD). Its prevalence is expected to reach 9 million persons globally by 2030 due to the aging of the world's population (Dorsey et al., 2007: Wirdefeldt et al., 2011). Lewy bodies, microgliosis, and gradual degeneration of dopaminergic neurons in the substantia nigra that project to the striatum are the hallmarks of the illness (Hornykiewicz.,1989; Dexter, & Jenner., 2019). The goal of current treatments is to manage motor symptoms; they have little effect on the degenerative process's advancement and eventually become ineffective (Olanow et al., 2009). Men are more likely than women to have Parkinson's disease (PD) (Wooten et al., 2004; Van Den Eeden et al.,2003). Furthermore, based on epidemiological data, it has been postulated that PD symptoms may have a later beginning in women, potentially due of the neuroprotective effect of female sex hormones earlier in childhood (Ragonese et al., 2004; Shulman, 2002). As a result, it has been suggested that female sex hormones may have a neuroprotective effect. Both epidemiological research and animal models show a potential neuroprotective role of estrogens (Ragonese et al., 2004; Baraka et al., 2011).

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

5. CONCLUSION:

The rising frequency of neurodegenerative disorders as the world's population ages highlights the critical need for effective neuroprotective techniques that address the fundamental causes of neuronal death rather than simply treating symptoms. Sex hormones, particularly progesterone, have emerged as important modulators of brain homeostasis, providing diverse protection against neurodegenerative processes.

Progesterone has several neuroprotective effects via antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, and anti-apoptotic mechanisms. It protects mitochondrial activity, decreases oxidative stress, and stabilizes neuronal membranes, preserving cellular energy balance. Furthermore, progesterone increases the expression of neurotrophic factors like BDNF and NGF, which aids in synapse repair and regeneration. It regulates APP metabolism, preventing the buildup of β-amyloid, a characteristic of Alzheimer's disease. Similarly, by lowering microglial activation and pro-inflammatory cytokines, progesterone slows the neuroinflammatory cascades that cause neuronal death.

In Parkinson's disease, progesterone, along with estrogen, appears to influence dopaminergic transmission and protect nigrostriatal neurons from oxidative and excitotoxic damage. The observed sex differences in Parkinson's disease incidence, with men having a higher vulnerability, reflect a biological benefit offered by female hormones. According to experimental investigations, selective estrogen receptor modulators and progesterone analogs can reduce Parkinson's disease symptoms and potentially halt disease development by protecting mitochondrial integrity and dopamine homeostasis.

Importantly, the time and manner of hormone delivery are critical factors influencing therapy outcome. The "critical window hypothesis" posits that early postmenopausal intervention provides the most neuroprotective advantages, but later therapy may have limited efficacy. Overall, the data points to progesterone as a promising neuroprotective treatment. Its capacity to target many degenerative pathways at once- oxidative stress, mitochondrial malfunction, inflammation, and apoptosis- makes it a unique neural survival modulator. However, additional clinical and mechanistic research are required to optimize dose regimens, reduce side effects, and translate preclinical discoveries into viable human medicines. Future research combining endocrinology, molecular neurology, and pharmacology will be required to fully exploit progesterone's therapeutic potential in neurodegenerative illnesses such as Alzheimer's and Parkinson's.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT:

The authors owe to School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University for their support to carry out this piece of review work.

CONFLICT OF INTEREST:

The authors declare no conflict of interest.

REFERENCES:

Amakiri, N., Kubosumi, A., Tran, J., & Reddy, P. H. (2019). Amyloid beta and microRNAs in Alzheimer's disease. *Frontiers in Neuroscience, 13*, 430. https://doi.org/10.3389/fnins.2019.00430

Anastasio, T. J. (2013). Exploring the contribution of estrogen to amyloid-beta regulation: A novel multifactorial computational modeling approach. *Frontiers in Pharmacology, 4*, 16. https://doi.org/10.3389/fphar.2013.00016

Arnold, S., De Araújo, G. W., & Beyer, C. (2008). Gender-specific regulation of mitochondrial fusion and fission gene transcription and viability of cortical astrocytes by steroid hormones. *Journal of Molecular Endocrinology, 41*(5), 289–300. https://doi.org/10.1677/JME-08-0085

Baraka, A. M., Korish, A. A., Soliman, G. A., & Kamal, H. (2011). The possible role of estrogen and selective estrogen receptor modulators in a rat model of Parkinson's disease. *Life Sciences, 88*(21–22), 879–885. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.lfs.2011.03.010

Barja, G. (2004). Free radicals and aging. *Trends in Neurosciences, 27*(10), 595–600. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tins.2004.07.005

Beal, M. F. (2005). Mitochondria take center stage in aging and neurodegeneration. *Annals of Neurology, 58*(4), 495–505. https://doi.org/10.1002/ana.20624

Bhattacherjee, A., Liao, Z., & Smith, P. G. (2014). Trophic factor and hormonal regulation of neurite outgrowth in sensory neuron-like 50B11 cells. *Neuroscience Letters, 558*, 120–125. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neulet.2013.11.018

Boulware, M. I., Kordasiewicz, H., & Mermelstein, P. G. (2007). Caveolin proteins are essential for distinct effects of membrane estrogen receptors in neurons. *Journal of Neuroscience, 27*(37), 9941–9950. https://doi.org/10.1523/JNEUROSCI.1647-07.2007

Brinton, R. D. (1994). The neurosteroid 3α-hydroxy-5α-pregnan-20-one enhances the outgrowth of neocortical neurons. *Brain Research, 661*(1–2), 71–77.

Brinton, R. D. (2008). The healthy cell bias of estrogen action: Mitochondrial bioenergetics and neurological implications. *Trends in Neurosciences, 31*(10), 529–537. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tins.2008.07.003

Brinton, R. D., Thompson, R. F., Foy, M. R., Baudry, M., Wang, J., Finch, C. E., et al. (2008). Progesterone receptors: Form and function in brain. *Frontiers in Neuroendocrinology, 29*(2), 313–339. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.yfrne.2008.02.001

Brinton, R. D., Thompson, R. F., Foy, M. R., Baudry, M., Wang, J., Finch, C. E., & Mack, W. J. (2000). Progesterone receptors: Form and function in brain. *Frontiers in Neuroendocrinology, 21*(1), 1–28.

Cantuti-Castelvetri, I., Lin, M. T., Zheng, K., Keller-McGandy, C. E., Betensky, R. A., Johns, D. R., et al. (2005). Somatic mitochondrial DNA mutations in single neurons and glia. *Neurobiology of Aging, 26*(10), 1343–1355. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neurobiolaging.2004.11.008

Chen, J. Q., Eshete, M., Alworth, W. L., & Yager, J. D. (2004). Binding of MCF-7 cell mitochondrial proteins and recombinant human estrogen receptors α and β to human mitochondrial DNA estrogen response elements. *Journal of Cellular Biochemistry, 93*(2), 358–373. https://doi.org/10.1002/jcb.20178

Correia, S. C., Santos, R. X., Cardoso, S., Carvalho, C., Santos, M. S., Oliveira, C. R., et al. (2010). Effects of estrogen in the brain: Is it a neuroprotective agent in Alzheimer's disease? *Current Aging Science, 3*(2), 113–126. https://doi.org/10.2174/1874609811003020113

Correia, S. C., Santos, R. X., Cardoso, S., Carvalho, C., Santos, M. S., Oliveira, C. R., et al. (2010). Effects of estrogen in the brain: Is it a neuroprotective agent in Alzheimer's disease? *Current Aging Science, 3*(2), 113–126. https://doi.org/10.2174/1874609811003020113

Demonacos, C. V., Karayanni, N., Hatzoglou, E., Tsiriyiotis, C., Spandidos, D. A., & Sekeris, C. E. (1996). Mitochondrial genes as sites of primary action of steroid hormones. *Steroids, 61*(4), 226–232. https://doi.org/10.1016/0039-128X(96)00019-0

Dexter, D. T., & Jenner, P. (2013). Parkinson disease: From pathology to molecular disease mechanisms. *Free Radical Biology and Medicine, 62*, 132–144. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2013.01.018

Dorostkar, M. M., Zou, C., Blazquez-Llorca, L., & Herms, J. (2015). Analyzing dendritic spine pathology in Alzheimer's disease: Problems and opportunities. *Acta Neuropathologica, 130*(1), 1–19. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00401-015-1449-5

Dorsey, E. R., Constantinescu, R., Thompson, J. P., Biglan, K. M., Holloway, R. G., Kieburtz, K., et al. (2007). Projected number of people with Parkinson disease in the most populous nations, 2005 through 2030. *Neurology, 68*(5), 384–386. https://doi.org/10.1212/01.wnl.0000247740.47667.03

Dubois, B., Hampel, H., Feldman, H. H., Scheltens, P., Aisen, P., Andrieu, S., et al. (2016). Preclinical Alzheimer's disease: Definition, natural history, and diagnostic criteria. *Alzheimer's & Dementia, 12*(3), 292–323.

Dumitriu, D., Rapp, P. R., McEwen, B. S., & Morrison, J. H. (2010). Estrogen and the aging brain: An elixir for the weary cortical network. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences, 1204*, 104–112. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1749-6632.2010.05529.x

Fahnestock, M., Garzon, D., Holsinger, R. M., & Michalski, B. (2002). Neurotrophic factors and Alzheimer's disease: Are we focusing on the wrong molecule? *Journal of Neural Transmission. Supplementum, 62*, 241–252. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-7091-6139-5_22

Gabbita, S. P., Lovell, M. A., & Markesbery, W. R. (1998). Increased nuclear DNA oxidation in the brain in Alzheimer's disease. *Journal of Neurochemistry, 71*(5), 2034–2040. https://doi.org/10.1046/j.1471-4159.1998.71052034.x

Garcia-Segura, L. M., Cardona-Gomez, P., Naftolin, F., & Chowen, J. A. (1998). Estradiol upregulates Bcl-2 expression in adult brain neurons. *Neuroreport, 9*(3), 593–597. https://doi.org/10.1097/00001756-199803090-00006

Gibbs, R. B. (1998). Levels of trkA and BDNF mRNA, but not NGF mRNA, fluctuate across the estrous cycle and increase in response to acute hormone replacement. *Brain Research, 787*(2), 259–268. https://doi.org/10.1016/s0006-8993(97)01511-4

Gibbs, R. B. (1998). Levels of trkA and BDNF mRNA, but not NGF mRNA, fluctuate across the estrous cycle and increase in response to acute hormone replacement. *Brain Research, 787*(2), 259–268.

Gomez-Mancilla, B., & Bedard, P. J. (1992). Effect of estrogen and progesterone on L-dopa induced dyskinesia in MPTP-treated monkeys. *Neuroscience Letters, 135*(1), 129–132. https://doi.org/10.1016/0304-3940(92)90152-W

Goodman, Y., Bruce, A. J., Cheng, B., & Mattson, M. P. (1996). Estrogens attenuate and corticosterone exacerbates excitotoxicity, oxidative injury, and amyloid β-peptide toxicity in hippocampal neurons. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences, 777*, 347–351.

Gredilla, R. (2011). DNA damage and base excision repair in mitochondria and their role in aging. *Journal of Aging Research, 2011,* 257093. https://doi.org/10.4061/2011/257093

Gredilla, R., Bohr, V. A., & Stevnsner, T. (2010). Mitochondrial DNA repair and association with aging—An update. *Experimental Gerontology, 45*(6), 478–488. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.exger.2010.01.017

Gredilla, R., Weissman, L., Yang, J. L., Bohr, V. A., & Stevnsner, T. (2012). Mitochondrial base excision repair in mouse synaptosomes during normal aging and in a model of Alzheimer's disease. *Neurobiology of Aging, 33*(4), 694–707. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neurobiolaging.2010.06.019

Green, P. S., Bishop, J., & Simpkins, J. W. (1997). 17α-estradiol exerts neuroprotective effects on SK-N-SH cells. *Journal of Neuroscience, 17*(2), 511–515. https://doi.org/10.1523/jneurosci.17-02-00511.1997

Hara, Y., Waters, E. M., McEwen, B. S., & Morrison, J. H. (2015). Estrogen effects on cognitive and synaptic health over the lifecourse. *Physiological Reviews, 95*(3), 785–807. https://doi.org/10.1152/physrev.00036.2014

Hara, Y., Yuk, F., Puri, R., Janssen, W. G., Rapp, P. R., & Morrison, J. H. (2014). Presynaptic mitochondrial morphology in monkey prefrontal cortex correlates with working memory and is improved with estrogen treatment. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America, 111*(1), 486–491. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1311310110

Herrick, S. P., Waters, E. M., Drake, C. T., McEwen, B. S., & Milner, T. A. (2006). Extranuclear estrogen receptor β immunoreactivity is on doublecortin-containing cells in the adult and neonatal rat dentate gyrus. *Brain Research, 1121*, 46–58. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.brainres.2006.08.084

Hollands, C., Tobin, M. K., Hsu, M., Musaraca, K., Yu, T. S., Mishra, R., et al. (2017). Depletion of adult neurogenesis exacerbates cognitive deficits in Alzheimer's disease by compromising hippocampal inhibition. *Molecular Neurodegeneration, 12*, 64. https://doi.org/10.1186/s13024-017-0215-1

Hornykiewicz, O. (1989). Ageing and neurotoxins as causative factors in idiopathic Parkinson's disease: A critical analysis of the neurochemical evidence. *Progress in Neuro-Psychopharmacology & Biological Psychiatry, 13*(3–4), 319–328. https://doi.org/10.1016/0278-5846(89)90121-8

Imam, S. Z., Karahalil, B., Hogue, B. A., Souza-Pinto, N. C., & Bohr, V. A. (2006). Mitochondrial and nuclear DNA-repair capacity of various brain regions in mouse is altered in an age-dependent manner. *Neurobiology of Aging, 27*(8), 1129–1136. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neurobiolaging.2005.06.002

Jeppesen, D. K., Bohr, V. A., & Stevnsner, T. (2011). DNA repair deficiency in neurodegeneration. *Progress in Neurobiology, 94*(2), 166–200. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.pneurobio.2011.04.013

Jiang, H., Xie, T., Ramsden, D. B., & Ho, S. L. (2003). Human catechol-O-methyltransferase down-regulation by estradiol. *Neuropharmacology, 45*(7), 1011–1018. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0028-3908(03)00286-7

Jin, W. (2020). Regulation of BDNF-TrkB signaling and potential therapeutic strategies for Parkinson's disease. *Journal of Clinical Medicine, 9*(1), 257. https://doi.org/10.3390/jcm9010257

Jin, W. (2020). Regulation of BDNF-TrkB signaling and potential therapeutic strategies for Parkinson's disease. *Journal of Clinical Medicine, 9*(1), 257. https://doi.org/10.3390/jcm9010257

Kang, D., Kim, S. H., & Hamasaki, N. (2007). Mitochondrial transcription factor A (TFAM): Roles in maintenance of mtDNA and cellular functions. *Mitochondrion, 7*(1–2), 39–44. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mito.2006.11.017

Kelly, M. J., & Levin, E. R. (2001). Rapid actions of plasma membrane estrogen receptors. *Trends in Endocrinology & Metabolism, 12*(4), 152–156. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1043-2760(01)00377-0

Kemper, M. F., Stirone, C., Krause, D. N., Duckles, S. P., & Procaccio, V. (2014). Genomic and non-genomic regulation of PGC-1 isoforms by estrogen to increase cerebral vascular mitochondrial biogenesis and reactive oxygen species protection. *European Journal of Pharmacology, 723*, 322–329. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejphar.2013.11.009

Kemper, M. F., Zhao, Y., Duckles, S. P., & Krause, D. N. (2013). Endogenous ovarian hormones affect mitochondrial efficiency in cerebral endothelium via distinct regulation of PGC-1 isoforms. *Journal of Cerebral Blood Flow & Metabolism, 33*(1), 122–128. https://doi.org/10.1038/jcbfm.2012.159

Kesharwani (Eds.), *Neurodegeneration: Molecular Mechanisms, Risk Factors, and Therapeutic Approaches* (pp. 65–82). Elsevier.

Kipp, M., Karakaya, S., Johann, S., Kampmann, E., Mey, J., & Beyer, C. (2006). Oestrogen and progesterone reduce lipopolysaccharide-induced expression of TNF-α and IL-18 in the brain. *Journal of Neuroimmunology, 174*(1–2), 121–129.

Klinge, C. M. (2017). Estrogens regulate life and death in mitochondria. *Journal of Bioenergetics and Biomembranes, 49*(4), 307–324. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10863-017-9704-1

Klinge, C. M. (2017). Estrogens regulate life and death in mitochondria. *Journal of Bioenergetics and Biomembranes, 49*(4), 307–324. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10863-017-9704-1

Klinge, C. M. (2017). Estrogens regulate life and death in mitochondria. *Journal of Bioenergetics and Biomembranes, 49*(4), 307–324. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10863-017-9704-1

Kujoth, G. C., Bradshaw, P. C., Haroon, S., & Prolla, T. A. (2007). The role of mitochondrial DNA mutations in mammalian aging. *PLoS Genetics, 3*(2), e24. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pgen.0030024

Kumar, S., Lata, K., Mukhopadhyay, S., & Mukherjee, T. K. (2010). Role of estrogen receptors in pro-oxidative and anti-oxidative actions of estrogens: A perspective. *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta (BBA) - General Subjects, 1800*(10), 1127–1135. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bbagen.2010.04.011

Li, R., & Singh, M. (2014). Sex differences in cognitive impairment and Alzheimer's disease. *Frontiers in Neuroendocrinology, 35*(3), 385–403. https://doi.org/10.1097/YCO.0000000000000401

Li, S., Kang, L., Zhang, Y., Feng, B., Du, J., & Cui, H. (2015). Detecting the presence of hippocampus membrane androgen receptors in male SAMP8 mice and their induced synaptic plasticity. *Molecular and Cellular Endocrinology, 414*, 82–90. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mce.2015.07.005

McCullough, L. D., Blizzard, K., Simpson, E. R., Oz, O. K., & Hurn, P. D. (2003). Aromatase cytochrome P450 and extragonadal estrogen play a role in ischemic neuroprotection. *Journal of Neuroscience, 23*(25), 8701–8705. https://doi.org/10.1523/jneurosci.23-25-08701.2003

McDevitt, M. A., Glidewell-Kenney, C., Jimenez, M. A., Ahearn, P. C., Weiss, J., Jameson, J. L., & others. (2008). New insights into the classical and non-classical actions of estrogen: Evidence from estrogen receptor knock-out and knock-in mice. *Molecular and Cellular Endocrinology, 290*(1–2), 24–30. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mce.2008.04.003

McEwen, B. S., & Milner, T. A. (2017). Understanding the broad influence of sex hormones and sex differences in the brain. *Journal of Neuroscience Research, 95*(1–2), 24–39. https://doi.org/10.1002/jnr.23809

McLachlan, R. I., Tempel, B. L., Miller, M. A., Bicknell, J. N., Bremner, W. J., & Dorsa, D. M. (1991). Androgen receptor gene expression in the rat central nervous system: Evidence for

two mRNA transcripts. *Molecular and Cellular Neurosciences, 2*(2), 117–122. https://doi.org/10.1016/1044-7431(91)90003-7

Melov, S. (2004). Modeling mitochondrial function in aging neurons. *Trends in Neurosciences, 27*(10), 601–606. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tins.2004.08.004

Micheli, F., Palermo, R., Talora, C., Ferretti, E., Vacca, A., & Napolitano, M. (2016). Regulation of proapoptotic proteins Bak1 and p53 by miR-125b in an experimental model of Alzheimer's disease: Protective role of 17β-estradiol. *Neuroscience Letters, 629*, 234–240. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neulet.2016.05.049

Milner, T. A., Ayoola, K., Drake, C. T., Herrick, S. P., Tabori, N. E., McEwen, B. S., et al. (2005). Ultrastructural localization of estrogen receptor β immunoreactivity in the rat hippocampal formation. *Journal of Comparative Neurology, 491*(2), 81–95. https://doi.org/10.1002/cne.20724

Milner, T. A., Lubbers, L. S., Alves, S. E., & McEwen, B. S. (2008). Nuclear and extranuclear estrogen binding sites in the rat forebrain and autonomic medullary areas. *Endocrinology, 149*(7), 3306–3312. https://doi.org/10.1210/en.2008-0307

Mo, M. S., Li, H. B., Wang, B. Y., Wang, S. L., Zhu, Z. L., & Yu, X. R. (2013). PI3K/Akt and NF-κB activation following intravitreal administration of 17β-estradiol: Neuroprotection of the rat retina from light-induced apoptosis. *Neuroscience, 228*, 1–12. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuroscience.2012.10.002

Morello, M., Landel, V., Lacassagne, E., Baranger, K., Annweiler, C., Feron, F., et al. (2018). Vitamin D improves neurogenesis and cognition in a mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. *Molecular Neurobiology, 55*(8), 6463–6479. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12035-017-0839-1

Moreno-Jiménez, E. P., Flor-García, M., Terreros-Roncal, J., Rábano, A., Cafini, F., Pallas-Bazarra, N., et al. (2019). Adult hippocampal neurogenesis is abundant in neurologically healthy subjects and drops sharply in patients with Alzheimer's disease. *Nature Medicine, 25*(4), 554–560. https://doi.org/10.1038/s41591-019-0375-9

Nilsen, J., & Brinton, R. D. (2003). Divergent impact of progesterone and medroxyprogesterone acetate (Provera) on nuclear mitogen-activated protein kinase signaling. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America, 100*(18), 10506–10511.

Nilsen, J., & Brinton, R. D. (2003). Mechanism of estrogen-mediated neuroprotection: Regulation of mitochondrial calcium and Bcl-2 expression. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America, 100*(5), 2842–2847. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.0438041100

Nilsson, S., Mäkelä, S., Treuter, E., Tujague, M., Thomsen, J., Andersson, G., et al. (2001). Mechanisms of estrogen action. *Physiological Reviews, 81*(4), 1535–1565. https://doi.org/10.1152/physrev.2001.81.4.1535

Numakawa, T., Matsumoto, T., Numakawa, Y., Richards, M., Yamawaki, S., & Kunugi, H. (2011). Protective action of neurotrophic factors and estrogen against oxidative stress-mediated neurodegeneration. *Journal of Toxicology, 2011,* Article 405194. https://doi.org/10.1155/2011/405194

Olanow, C. W., Stern, M. B., & Sethi, K. (2009). The scientific and clinical basis for the treatment of Parkinson disease. *Neurology, 72*(Suppl 4), S1–S136. https://doi.org/10.1212/WNL.0b013e3181a1d44c

Overk, C. R., Lu, P. Y., Wang, Y. T., Choi, J., Shaw, J. W., Thatcher, G. R., et al. (2012). Effects of aromatase inhibition versus gonadectomy on hippocampal complex amyloid pathology in triple transgenic mice. *Neurobiology of Disease, 45*(1), 479–487. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nbd.2011.08.035

Petersen, S. L., Intlekofer, K. A., Moura-Conlon, P. J., Brewer, D. N., Del Pino Sans, J., & Lopez, J. A. (2013). Novel progesterone receptors: Neural localization and possible functions. *Frontiers in Neuroscience, 7*, Article 164. https://doi.org/10.3389/fnins.2013.00164

Pike, C. J., Carroll, J. C., Rosario, E. R., & Barron, A. M. (2009). Protective actions of sex steroid hormones in Alzheimer's disease. *Frontiers in Neuroendocrinology, 30*(2), 239–258. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.yfrne.2009.04.015

Psarra, A. M., & Sekeris, C. E. (2008). Steroid and thyroid hormone receptors in mitochondria. *IUBMB Life, 60*(4), 210–223. https://doi.org/10.1002/iub.37

Ragonese, P., D'amelio, M., Salemi, G., Aridon, P., Gammino, M., Epifanio, A., et al. (2004). Risk of Parkinson disease in women: Effect of reproductive characteristics. *Neurology, 62*(11), 2010–2014. https://doi.org/10.1212/WNL.62.11.2010

Ragonese, P., D'Amelio, M., Salemi, G., Aridon, P., Gammino, M., Epifanio, A., et al. (2004). Risk of Parkinson disease in women: Effect of reproductive characteristics. *Neurology, 62*(11), 2010–2014. https://doi.org/10.1212/wnl.62.11.2010

Rettberg, J. R., Yao, J., & Brinton, R. D. (2014). Estrogen: A master regulator of bioenergetic systems in the brain and body. *Frontiers in Neuroendocrinology, 35*(1), 8–30. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.yfrne.2013.08.001

Rettberg, J. R., Yao, J., & Brinton, R. D. (2014). Estrogen: A master regulator of bioenergetic systems in the brain and body. *Frontiers in Neuroendocrinology, 35*, 8–30. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.yfrne.2013.08.001

Roof, R. L., & Hall, E. D. (2000). Gender differences in acute CNS trauma and stroke: Neuroprotective effects of estrogen and progesterone. *Journal of Neurotrauma, 17*(5), 367–388.

Sanders, L. H., McCoy, J., Hu, X., Mastroberardino, P. G., Dickinson, B. C., Chang, C. J., et al. (2014). Mitochondrial DNA damage: Molecular marker of vulnerable nigral neurons in Parkinson's disease. *Neurobiology of Disease, 70,* 214–223. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.nbd.2014.06.014

Sarkey, S., Azcoitia, I., Garcia-Segura, L. M., Garcia-Ovejero, D., & DonCarlos, L. L. (2008). Classical androgen receptors in non-classical sites in the brain. *Hormones and Behavior, 53*(5), 753–764. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.yhbeh.2008.02.015

Saunders-Pullman, R., Gordon-Elliott, J., Parides, M., Fahn, S., Saunders, H. R., & Bressman, S. (1999). The effect of estrogen replacement on early Parkinson's disease. *Neurology, 52*(7), 1417–1421. https://doi.org/10.1212/WNL.52.7.1417

Scarpulla, R. C. (2008). Transcriptional paradigms in mammalian mitochondrial biogenesis and function. *Physiological Reviews, 88*(2), 611–638. https://doi.org/10.1152/physrev.00025.2007

Sherwin, B. B. (2003). Estrogen and cognitive functioning in women. *Endocrine Reviews, 24*(2), 133–151.

Shohayeb, B., Diab, M., Ahmed, M., & Ng, D. C. H. (2018). Factors that influence adult neurogenesis as potential therapy. *Translational Neurodegeneration, 7*, 4. https://doi.org/10.1186/s40035-018-0119-y

Shulman, L. M. (2002). Is there a connection between estrogen and Parkinson's disease? *Parkinsonism & Related Disorders, 8*(5), 289–295. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1353-8020(02)00014-7

Shulman, L. M. (2002). Is there a connection between estrogen and Parkinson's disease? *Parkinsonism & Related Disorders, 8*(5), 289–295. https://doi.org/10.1016/s1353-8020(02)00014-7

Shuster, L. T., Rhodes, D. J., Gostout, B. S., Grossardt, B. R., & Rocca, W. A. (2010). Premature menopause or early menopause: Long-term health consequences. *Maturitas, 65*(2), 161–166. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.maturitas.2009.08.003

Simpkins, J. W., Yang, S. H., Sarkar, S. N., & Pearce, V. (2008). Estrogen actions on mitochondria—Physiological and pathological implications. *Molecular and Cellular Endocrinology, 290*(1–2), 51–59. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.mce.2008.04.013

Singh, M. (2001). Ovarian hormones elicit phosphorylation of Akt and extracellular-signal regulated kinase in explants of the cerebral cortex. *Endocrine, 14*(3), 407–415.

Singh, M., Sumien, N., Kyser, C., & Simpkins, J. W. (2008). Estrogens and progesterone as neuroprotectants: what animal models teach us. *Frontiers in bioscience : a journal and virtual library*, *13*, 1083–1089.

Song, Y. J., Li, S. R., Li, X. W., Chen, X., Wei, Z. X., Liu, Q. S., et al. (2020). The effect of estrogen replacement therapy on Alzheimer's disease and Parkinson's disease in postmenopausal women: A meta-analysis. *Frontiers in Neuroscience, 14*, 157. https://doi.org/10.3389/fnins.2020.00157

Sopova, K., Gatsiou, K., Stellos, K., & Laske, C. (2014). Dysregulation of neurotrophic and haematopoietic growth factors in Alzheimer's disease: From pathophysiology to novel treatment strategies. *Current Alzheimer Research, 11*(1), 27–39. https://doi.org/10.2174/1567205010666131120100743

Starkov, A. A. (2008). The role of mitochondria in reactive oxygen species metabolism and signaling. *Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences, 1147*(1), 37–52. https://doi.org/10.1196/annals.1427.015

Stein, D. G. (2001). Brain damage, sex hormones, and recovery: A new role for progesterone and estrogen? *Trends in Neurosciences, 24*(7), 386–391.

Suzuki, T., Masuda, M., Friesen, M. D., & Ohshima, H. (2001). Formation of spiroiminodihydantoin nucleoside by reaction of 8-oxo-7,8-dihydro-2′-deoxyguanosine with hypochlorous acid or a myeloperoxidase-H_2O_2-Cl^- system. *Chemical Research in Toxicology, 14*(9), 1163–1169. https://doi.org/10.1021/tx010024z

Tsang, K. L., Ho, S. L., & Lo, S. K. (2000). Estrogen improves motor disability in parkinsonian postmenopausal women with motor fluctuations. *Neurology, 54*(12), 2292–2298. https://doi.org/10.1212/WNL.54.12.2292

Vail, G., & Roepke, T. A. (2019). Membrane-initiated estrogen signaling via Gq-coupled GPCR in the central nervous system. *Steroids, 142*, 77–83. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.steroids.2018.01.010

Van Den Eeden, S. K., Tanner, C. M., Bernstein, A. L., Fross, R. D., Leimpeter, A., Bloch, D. A., et al. (2003). Incidence of Parkinson's disease: Variation by age, gender, and

race/ethnicity. *American Journal of Epidemiology, 157*(11), 1015–1022. https://doi.org/10.1093/aje/kwg068

Vaucher, E., Reymond, I., Najaffe, R., Kar, S., Quirion, R., Miller, M. M., et al. (2002). Estrogen effects on object memory and cholinergic receptors in young and old female mice. *Neurobiology of Aging, 23*(1), 87–95. https://doi.org/10.1016/s0197-4580(01)00250-0

Vermulst, M., Bielas, J. H., Kujoth, G. C., Ladiges, W. C., Rabinovitch, P. S., Prolla, T. A., et al. (2007). Mitochondrial point mutations do not limit the natural lifespan of mice. *Nature Genetics, 39*(4), 540–543. https://doi.org/10.1038/ng1988

Virbasius, J. V., & Scarpulla, R. C. (1994). Activation of the human mitochondrial transcription factor A gene by nuclear respiratory factors: A potential regulatory link between nuclear and mitochondrial gene expression in organelle biogenesis. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America, 91*(4), 1309–1313. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.91.4.1309

Wang, S., Ren, P., Li, X., Guan, Y., & Zhang, Y. A. (2011). 17β-estradiol protects dopaminergic neurons in organotypic slice of mesencephalon by MAPK-mediated activation of anti-apoptosis gene BCL2. *Journal of Molecular Neuroscience, 45*(3), 236–245. https://doi.org/10.1007/s12031-011-9500-z

Weissman, L., de Souza-Pinto, N. C., Stevnsner, T., & Bohr, V. A. (2007). DNA repair, mitochondria, and neurodegeneration. *Neuroscience, 145*(4), 1318–1329. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuroscience.2006.08.061

Wirdefeldt, K., Adami, H.-O., Cole, P., Trichopoulos, D., & Mandel, J. (2011). Epidemiology and etiology of Parkinson's disease: A review of the evidence. *European Journal of Epidemiology, 26*(Suppl 1), S1–S58. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10654-011-9581-6

Wooten, G. F., Currie, L. J., Bovbjerg, V. E., Lee, J. K., & Patrie, J. (2004). Are men at greater risk for Parkinson's disease than women? *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery & Psychiatry, 75*(4), 637–639. https://doi.org/10.1136/jnnp.2003.020982

World Health Organization. (2017). *Mental health of older adults*.

Yadav, S. K., Pandey, S., & Singh, B. (2017). Role of estrogen and levodopa in 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine (MPTP)-induced cognitive deficit in Parkinsonian ovariectomized mice model: A comparative study. *Journal of Chemical Neuroanatomy, 85,* 50–59. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jchemneu.2017.07.002

Yaffe, K., Haan, M., Byers, A., Tangen, C., & Kuller, L. (2000). Estrogen use, APOE, and cognitive decline: Evidence of gene–environment interaction. *Neurology, 54*(10), 1949–1954. https://doi.org/10.1212/wnl.54.10.1949

Yang, S. H., Liu, R., Perez, E. J., Wen, Y., Stevens, S. M., Jr., Valencia, T., et al. (2004). Mitochondrial localization of estrogen receptor β. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America, 101*(12), 4130–4135. https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.0306948101

Yi, H., Bao, X., Tang, X., Fan, X., & Xu, H. (2016). Estrogen modulation of calretinin and BDNF expression in midbrain dopaminergic neurons of ovariectomised mice. *Journal of Chemical Neuroanatomy, 77,* 60–67. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jchemneu.2016.05.005

Yu, P., Li, S., Zhang, Z., Wen, X., Quan, W., Tian, Q., et al. (2017). Progesterone-mediated angiogenic activity of endothelial progenitor cells and angiogenesis in traumatic brain injury rats were antagonized by progesterone receptor antagonist. *Cell Proliferation, 50*(6), e12362. https://doi.org/10.1111/cpr.12362

Zagni, E., Simoni, L., & Colombo, D. (2016). Sex and gender differences in central nervous system-related disorders. *Neural Plasticity, 2016*, 2827090. https://doi.org/10.1155/2016/2827090

Zárate, S., & Seilicovich, A. (2010). Estrogen receptors and signaling pathways in lactotropes and somatotropes. *Neuroendocrinology, 92*(3), 215–223. https://doi.org/10.1159/000321683

Zárate, S., Stevnsner, T., & Gredilla, R. (2017). Role of estrogen and other sex hormones in brain aging: Neuroprotection and DNA repair. *Frontiers in Aging Neuroscience, 9*, 430.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Chapter 7

Purification and Formulation of an Active Pharmaceutical Ingredient: Advanced Methodologies and Quality Considerations

Priyajit Banerjee[1], Suranjana Sarkar[2], Debaprasad Koner[1], Nimai Chandra Saha[3]

[1] *Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata- 700121*

[2] *Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata- 700121*

[3] *Vice Chancellor, Harichand Guruchand University, North 24 Paraganas, West Bengal, India*

**Corresponding Author's Email ID: priyajitb@svu.ac.in*

ABSTRACT

The transformation of crude active pharmaceutical ingredients (APIs) into therapeutically effective drug products requires sophisticated purification and formulation strategies that ensure compliance with stringent regulatory standards. This comprehensive review examines current methodologies employed in API purification, encompassing crystallization techniques, chromatographic separations, and emerging purification technologies. The formulation aspects address excipient selection, dosage form design, stability considerations, and quality control measures essential for successful pharmaceutical development. Various purification approaches have demonstrated effectiveness in removing organic impurities, inorganic contaminants, residual solvents, and process-related substances to achieve pharmacopeial purity specifications typically exceeding 98%. Crystallization methods, including cooling, antisolvent, and reactive crystallization, have proven particularly valuable for large-scale purification while simultaneously controlling critical material attributes such as particle size distribution and polymorphic form. Advanced techniques including supercritical fluid extraction and membrane-based separations provide additional capabilities for challenging purification scenarios. Formulation development requires systematic evaluation of API physicochemical properties, excipient compatibility, and manufacturing requirements to optimize bioavailability, stability, and patient compliance. Quality by Design principles increasingly guide development decisions, emphasizing risk assessment and control strategy implementation. However, the integration of continuous manufacturing processes and the

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

emergence of specialized drug delivery systems present ongoing challenges requiring innovative purification and formulation approaches. The present review identifies critical success factors and emerging trends that will shape future pharmaceutical development paradigms.

Keywords: Active pharmaceutical ingredient, purification, crystallization, formulation, quality control, drug development

---

1. INTRODUCTION:

1.1. The Pharmaceutical Development Paradigm:

The development of pharmaceutical products represents a complex multidisciplinary endeavor requiring the integration of synthetic chemistry, analytical science, materials engineering, and regulatory compliance to transform promising drug candidates into safe and effective therapeutic agents. At the heart of this process lies the critical challenge of API purification and formulation, which serves as the bridge between drug discovery and clinical application. The pharmaceutical industry has evolved sophisticated methodologies to address the stringent purity requirements mandated by regulatory authorities worldwide, with current standards typically requiring API purity levels exceeding 98% while maintaining individual impurity limits below 0.1-0.15% (Moosivand et al. 2019).

The regulatory landscape governing pharmaceutical development has become increasingly rigorous, with guidelines from the International Council for Harmonisation (ICH) establishing comprehensive frameworks for impurity control (ICH Q3A, Q3B, Q3C), analytical method validation (ICH Q2), and quality systems (ICH Q8, Q9, Q10). These regulatory requirements have driven the development of advanced purification technologies and sophisticated formulation strategies that ensure consistent product quality while maintaining economic viability. Modern pharmaceutical manufacturing increasingly emphasizes Quality by Design (QbD) principles, which require systematic understanding and control of critical process parameters throughout the development lifecycle (Al Azawei et al., 2025).

1.2. Impurity Classification and Regulatory Considerations:

Impurities in pharmaceutical APIs arise from multiple sources and can be systematically classified into distinct categories based on their origin and chemical nature. Organic impurities typically represent the most challenging purification targets due to their structural similarity to

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

the API, often requiring sophisticated separation techniques to achieve adequate resolution. These impurities may include unreacted starting materials, synthetic intermediates, side products from competing reactions, and degradation products formed during processing or storage. Inorganic impurities, primarily consisting of residual catalysts, salts from neutralization reactions, and other inorganic reagents, generally present fewer purification challenges but must be controlled to parts-per-million levels to prevent adverse effects on product stability and patient safety (Ozawa et al., 2022).

Residual solvents constitute another critical impurity category, with ICH Q3C guidelines establishing a three-class system based on toxicological considerations. Class 1 solvents are prohibited due to their carcinogenic or severely toxic properties, Class 2 solvents are limited to specific concentrations based on acceptable daily exposure levels, and Class 3 solvents are considered less toxic with higher acceptable limits. The control of residual solvents requires careful attention to drying conditions, analytical monitoring, and process optimization to ensure compliance with regulatory specifications while maintaining manufacturing efficiency (Stocker et al., 2022).

2. PURIFICATION METHODOLOGIES:

2.1. Crystallization Techniques:

Crystallization represents the most widely utilized purification technique in pharmaceutical manufacturing, leveraging thermodynamic principles to achieve separation based on differential solubility between the target API and impurities. The crystallization process simultaneously accomplishes multiple objectives: purification through selective incorporation of the target molecule into the crystal lattice, control of particle size distribution for downstream processing requirements, and determination of crystal habit and polymorphic form that influence stability and bioavailability. The fundamental driving force for crystallization is supersaturation, which can be generated through various mechanisms including temperature reduction, solvent evaporation, antisolvent addition, or chemical precipitation.

Cooling crystallization exploits the temperature dependence of solubility to generate supersaturation through controlled temperature reduction. This technique proves particularly effective for compounds exhibiting strong temperature-solubility relationships and allows for precise control of crystallization kinetics through programmed cooling profiles. Antisolvent crystallization involves the addition of a miscible poor solvent to reduce the effective solubility of the API, enabling rapid crystallization with excellent purification efficiency. This approach offers advantages for heat-sensitive compounds and provides flexibility in controlling

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

nucleation and growth rates through antisolvent addition profiles (Dhondale et al., 2023; Mbodji et al., 2025).

Table 1: Comparative analysis of crystallization techniques employed in API purification.

Method	Principle	Advantages	Applications	Reference
Cooling crystallization	Temperature-dependent solubility reduction	Precise kinetic control, excellent purity	High-solubility APIs, large-scale production	Newman and Zografi, 2022
Antisolvent precipitation	Solubility reduction via poor solvent addition	Heat-sensitive compounds, rapid processing	Temperature-labile APIs, fine particle control	Wu and Wand, 2022
Evaporative crystallization	Solvent removal increases concentration	Solvent recovery, environmental benefits	Small-scale purification, solvent-sensitive systems	Lamrani et al., 2025
Reactive crystallization	Chemical reaction creates insoluble product	Salt formation, pH optimization	Salt selection, bioavailability enhancement	Manghnani et al., 2023

2.2. Chromatographic Purification:

Chromatographic techniques provide sophisticated tools for API purification when conventional crystallization methods prove inadequate for achieving required purity specifications. These separation methods exploit differential interactions between the API and structurally similar impurities with stationary phases, enabling high-resolution separations that would be impossible through physical methods alone. Column chromatography remains the primary workhorse for preparative-scale purification, utilizing various stationary phases

including normal-phase silica gel, reversed-phase materials, ion-exchange resins, and specialized chiral selectors for enantiomeric purification (Chew et al., 2021).

The optimization of chromatographic purification requires systematic evaluation of multiple parameters including stationary phase selection, mobile phase composition, flow rates, and loading conditions. Modern preparative chromatography increasingly employs continuous processing techniques such as simulated moving bed (SMB) technology and multicolumn countercurrent solvent gradient purification (MCSGP) to improve efficiency and reduce solvent consumption. These advanced techniques offer significant advantages in terms of productivity and environmental impact while maintaining the high purity levels required for pharmaceutical applications (Rahman and Haque, 2022).

3. FORMULATION DEVELOPMENT:

3.1. API Characterization and Pre-formulation Studies:

Comprehensive characterization of purified APIs constitutes the foundation of successful formulation development, providing essential data for rational excipient selection and dosage form design. Pre-formulation studies encompass physicochemical characterization including solubility profiling across physiologically relevant pH ranges, intrinsic dissolution rate determination, particle size distribution analysis, and crystal structure identification through X-ray powder diffraction (XRPD). These fundamental properties directly influence formulation strategies and ultimately determine the bioavailability and stability of the finished drug product (Ozaqa et al., 2022).

Stability assessment under various environmental conditions provides crucial information regarding degradation pathways, storage requirements, and compatibility with formulation components. Forced degradation studies conducted under conditions of elevated temperature, humidity, light exposure, and pH extremes reveal potential impurities that may form during product shelf-life and guide the development of appropriate stability-indicating analytical methods. The integration of preformulation data with computational modeling approaches increasingly enables predictive formulation design and optimization (Ibrahim et sl., 2019).

3.2. Excipient Selection and Compatibility Assessment:

The selection of appropriate excipients represents a critical decision point in formulation development, requiring consideration of functional requirements, API compatibility, regulatory status, and manufacturing constraints. Modern excipient selection employs systematic

screening approaches utilizing design of experiments (DoE) methodologies to evaluate multiple candidates simultaneously while identifying potential interactions. Compatibility studies combining thermal analysis, spectroscopic techniques, and accelerated stability testing provide comprehensive assessment of API-excipient interactions that could compromise product quality or stability (Janssen et al., 2024; Malkawi et al., 2025).

Functional categories of excipients include diluents for bulk and compressibility, binders for mechanical strength, disintegrants for drug release, lubricants for processing efficiency, and protective agents for stability enhancement. Each category presents specific considerations for API compatibility and formulation performance. For instance, the selection of appropriate disintegrants must balance rapid tablet breakdown with manufacturing robustness, while lubricant selection requires optimization of processing properties without compromising dissolution performance (Ozawa et al., 2022).

4. QUALITY CONTROL AND ANALYTICAL METHODS:

Comprehensive analytical testing ensures that purified APIs and formulated drug products consistently meet established specifications throughout their development and commercial lifecycle. Analytical methods must be validated according to ICH Q2 guidelines, demonstrating specificity, linearity, accuracy, precision, range, detection limit, quantitation limit, and robustness. High-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) serves as the primary technique for API quantification and impurity profiling, with method development focused on achieving baseline resolution of the API from all potential impurities and degradation products.

Modern pharmaceutical analysis increasingly relies on hyphenated techniques combining chromatographic separation with mass spectrometric detection (LC-MS/MS) for enhanced specificity and sensitivity. These advanced methods enable identification and quantification of trace impurities at levels previously undetectable, supporting comprehensive impurity profiling and regulatory compliance. Process analytical technology (PAT) provides real-time monitoring capabilities throughout purification and formulation processes, enabling continuous quality assurance and process optimization through multivariate data analysis and control strategies (Duarte et al., 2025).

5. CONCLUSION:

The purification and formulation of active pharmaceutical ingredients represent a critical bridge between drug discovery and clinical application, requiring integration of chemical engineering principles, materials science, and regulatory knowledge to develop robust, scalable

processes. Evidence obtained from numerous development programs demonstrates that systematic application of purification methodologies, guided by comprehensive understanding of API physicochemical properties and impurity profiles, enables consistent achievement of pharmacopeial purity specifications while maintaining manufacturing efficiency and economic viability.

Crystallization techniques remain the foundation of pharmaceutical purification, offering simultaneous purification and material property control through judicious selection of crystallization conditions and process parameters. The integration of advanced analytical methods with Quality by Design principles enables predictive development approaches that reduce development timelines and enhance product understanding. Future developments will likely emphasize sustainability, continuous processing, and digital technologies while maintaining the rigorous quality standards essential for pharmaceutical excellence. The evolution toward personalized medicine and specialized drug delivery systems will require continued innovation in both purification and formulation methodologies to address increasingly complex molecular targets and patient populations.

REFERENCES:

Al Azawei, A., Loughrey, K., Surim, K., Connolly, M. E., & Naughton, B. D. (2025). The management of good manufacturing practice (GMP) inspections: a scoping review of the evidence. *Frontiers in medicine*, *12*, 1687864.

Chew, Y. L., Khor, M. A., & Lim, Y. Y. (2021). Choices of chromatographic methods as stability indicating assays for pharmaceutical products: A review. *Heliyon*, *7*(3), e06553.

Dhondale, M. R., Nambiar, A. G., Singh, M., Mali, A. R., Agrawal, A. K., Shastri, N. R., Kumar, P., & Kumar, D. (2023). Current Trends in API Co-Processing: Spherical Crystallization and Co-Precipitation Techniques. *Journal of pharmaceutical sciences*, *112*(8), 2010–2028.

Duarte, J. G., Duarte, M. G., Piedade, A. P., & Mascarenhas-Melo, F. (2025). Rethinking Pharmaceutical Industry with Quality by Design: Application in Research, Development, Manufacturing, and Quality Assurance. *The AAPS journal*, *27*(4), 96.

Ibrahim, M., Zhang, J., Repka, M., & Chen, R. (2019). Characterization of the Solid Physical State of API and Its Distribution in Pharmaceutical Hot Melt Extrudates Using Terahertz Raman Imaging. *AAPS PharmSciTech*, *20*(2), 62.

Janssen, P. H. M., Fathollahi, S., Dickhoff, B. H. J., & Frijlink, H. W. (2024). Critical review on the role of excipient properties in pharmaceutical powder-to-tablet continuous manufacturing. *Expert opinion on drug delivery*, *21*(7), 1069–1079.

Lamrani, T., Orszulak, L., Tarnacka, M., Hachula, B., Nowakowska, K., Kaminski, K., & Jurkiewicz, K. (2025). Effect of solvent evaporation on the liquid-crystalline order of itraconazole. *Scientific reports*, *15*(1), 40129.

Malkawi, R., & Altahrawi, L. (2025). Excipients in pharmaceuticals: mechanisms of hypersensitivity and the role of global pharmacovigilance. *Saudi pharmaceutical journal : SPJ : the official publication of the Saudi Pharmaceutical Society*, *33*(4), 18.

Manghnani, P. N., Schenck, L., Khan, S. A., & Doyle, P. S. (2023). Templated Reactive Crystallization of Active Pharmaceutical Ingredient in Hydrogel Microparticles Enabling Robust Drug Product Processing. *Journal of pharmaceutical sciences*, *112*(8), 2115–2123.

Mbodji, A., Cruz, K. M., Gómez, A. A., Vlaar, C. P., Duconge, J., Monbaliu, J. M., Cersonsky, R. K., Yu, L., Zhang, G. G., Coquerel, G., Romañach, R. J., & Stelzer, T. (2025). Controlled API crystallization during additive manufacturing of solid dosage form for flexible integrated pharmaceutical manufacturing. *International journal of pharmaceutics*, *685*, 126197.

Moosivand, A., Rajabzadeh Ghatari, A., & Rasekh, H. R. (2019). Supply Chain Challenges in Pharmaceutical Manufacturing Companies: Using Qualitative System Dynamics Methodology. *Iranian journal of pharmaceutical research : IJPR*, *18*(2), 1103–1116.

Newman, A., & Zografi, G. (2022). What Are the Important Factors That Influence API Crystallization in Miscible Amorphous API-Excipient Mixtures during Long-Term Storage in the Glassy State?. *Molecular pharmaceutics*, *19*(2), 378–391.

Ozawa, S., Chen, H. H., Lee, Y. A., Higgins, C. R., & Yemeke, T. T. (2022). Characterizing Medicine Quality by Active Pharmaceutical Ingredient Levels: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis across Low- and Middle-Income Countries. *The American journal of tropical medicine and hygiene*, *106*(6), 1778–1790.

Rahman, H., & Haque, S. M. (2022). Development and Validation of Chromatographic and Spectrophotometric Methods for the Quantitation of Rufinamide in Pharmaceutical Preparations. *Turkish journal of pharmaceutical sciences*, *19*(3), 267–272.

Stocker, M. W., Harding, M. J., Todaro, V., Healy, A. M., & Ferguson, S. (2022). Integrated Purification and Formulation of an Active Pharmaceutical Ingredient via Agitated Bed Crystallization and Fluidized Bed Processing. *Pharmaceutics*, *14*(5), 1058.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Wu, C. Y., & Wang, W. (2022). Application of Antisolvent Precipitation Method for Formulating Excipient-Free Nanoparticles of Psychotropic Drugs. *Pharmaceutics*, *14*(4), 819.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Chapter 8

Huntington's Disease: Pathogenesis, Clinical Features, and Emerging Therapeutic Strategies- A Comprehensive Review

Ronit Roy, Priyankar Pal*

[1] *Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata 700121*

**Corresponding Author's Email ID: priyankarp@svu.ac.in*

ABSTRACT

Huntington's disease (HD) is a fatal, autosomal dominant neurodegenerative disorder caused by a CAG trinucleotide repeat expansion (≥40 repeats) in the huntingtin (HTT) gene on chromosome 4p16.3 (HD Collaborative Research Group, 1993). The resultant mutant huntingtin (mHTT) protein triggers a toxic gain-of-function cascade, preferentially destroying striatal GABAergic medium spiny neurons and producing the clinical triad of progressive motor dysfunction, cognitive decline, and neuropsychiatric disturbance (Ross & Tabrizi, 2011). Global prevalence varies markedly- reaching 9.71 per 100,000 in predominantly Caucasian populations versus 0.42 per 100,000 in East Asia- reflecting inter-ethnic differences in CAG repeat length distributions (Rawlins et al., 2016). Disease onset typically occurs at ~40 years, with survival of 15–25 years post-diagnosis (Walker, 2007). No disease-modifying therapy is currently approved; however, antisense oligonucleotides (ASOs), RNA interference (RNAi), and CRISPR/Cas9-based gene editing represent transformative therapeutic frontiers under active investigation (McColgan & Tabrizi, 2018).

Keywords: Huntington's disease, polyglutamine expansion, mutant huntingtin, neurodegeneration, antisense oligonucleotides, CAG trinucleotide repeat

1. INTRODUCTION:

First described by George Huntington in 1872, HD is a monogenic disorder in which a CAG repeat expansion within exon 1 of the *HTT* gene encodes an abnormally elongated polyglutamine (polyQ) tract in the HTT protein (Wexler et al., 2016). Repeat lengths ≥40 confer virtually complete penetrance by age 65, whereas lengths of 36–39 exhibit reduced penetrance;

intermediate alleles (27–35 repeats) may expand in subsequent generations, a phenomenon termed genetic anticipation (Langbehn et al., 2004). In Western populations, prevalence ranges from 4–13.7 per 100,000, with a mean onset age of 40 years and disease duration of 15–25 years (Walker, 2007; Rawlins et al., 2016). HD remains incurable, imposing enormous burdens on patients, caregivers, and healthcare systems. This review synthesises current knowledge of HD epidemiology, molecular pathogenesis, clinical features, and emerging disease-modifying interventions.

2. EPIDEMIOLOGY:

Global HD prevalence varies more than tenfold. Caucasian-predominant populations (Australia, Western Europe, North America) record an average of 9.71 (95% CI: 9.32–10.12) per 100,000, while East Asian populations (Hong Kong, Japan, South Korea, Taiwan) average 0.42 (95% CI: 0.37–0.47) per 100,000—a disparity linked to shorter mean CAG allele lengths in Asian populations (18.4–18.7 in Europeans vs. 16.9–17.4 in Asians) (Rawlins et al., 2016; Bates et al., 2015). Sub-Saharan African prevalence appears extremely low (0.02–1.00 per 100,000), likely reflecting both genetic and ascertainment factors (Lekoubou et al., 2014). Rising prevalence in high-income countries is attributed to improved genetic diagnostic capacity, reduced stigma, and increasing life expectancy (Rawlins et al., 2016). Systematic reviews by Pringsheim et al. (2012) and Hoppitt et al. (2011) confirmed these regional trends, while Evans et al. (2013) documented a significant increase in UK prevalence over recent decades.

3. MOLECULAR PATHOGENESIS:

3.1 HTT Protein Structure and Function:

The HTT protein (~350 kDa) comprises tandem HEAT repeats forming a superhelical scaffold that coordinates multiprotein complexes at its N-terminus and undergoes extensive post-translational modification (PTM) (Ross & Tabrizi, 2011). Normal HTT resides predominantly in the cytoplasm, facilitating vesicle transport, BDNF transcription and axonal trafficking, and regulation of gene expression. Despite the absence of a canonical nuclear localisation signal, HTT dynamically shuttles to the nucleus (Ross & Tabrizi, 2011).

3.2 Toxic Gain-of-Function Mechanism:

Converging genetic, cell-biological, and animal model data establish a primary toxic gain-of-function of mHTT, rather than loss of normal HTT function (Ross & Tabrizi, 2011). Key patho-mechanisms include: (i) adoption of aberrant β-sheet conformations and formation of N-

terminal fragment aggregates; (ii) impairment of the ubiquitin–proteasome system (UPS) and autophagy–lysosome pathway, reducing clearance of misfolded proteins; (iii) nuclear translocation of mHTT fragments, disrupting transcriptional programmes including BDNF synthesis via sequestration of CBP and other co-activators; (iv) mitochondrial dysfunction manifesting as reduced complex I/II/III/IV activity and diminished oxidative phosphorylation; (v) excitotoxicity mediated by dysregulated NMDA receptor signalling at corticostriatal synapses; and (vi) altered PTMs (ubiquitination, phosphorylation, sumoylation, palmitoylation, acetylation) that modulate mHTT aggregation, localisation, and clearance (Ross & Tabrizi, 2011; Ha & Fung, 2012). Non-cell-autonomous mechanisms—including glial mHTT expression inducing excitotoxicity in adjacent neurons—further amplify neurodegeneration (Ross & Tabrizi, 2011).

3.3 Selective Striatal Vulnerability:

Despite ubiquitous HTT expression, the striatum is disproportionately vulnerable, with up to 95% of GABAergic medium spiny neurons (MSNs) undergoing degeneration while adjacent large interneurons are relatively spared (Ross & Tabrizi, 2011). Proposed mechanisms include heightened dependence of MSNs on cortically derived BDNF and enhanced susceptibility to glutamate-mediated excitotoxicity via NMDA receptor over-activation (Ross & Tabrizi, 2011). CAG repeat length accounts for only 50–70% of variance in age-at-onset; modifier loci—including *HAP1*, *GRIK2*, and DNA repair genes *FAN1* and *MTMR10* (chromosome 15)—contribute additional risk (McColgan & Tabrizi, 2018).

4. NEUROPATHOLOGY:

Post-mortem examination reveals progressive atrophy of the caudate and putamen following a caudorostral, dorsoventral gradient, with secondary involvement of the globus pallidus and nucleus accumbens (McColgan & Tabrizi, 2018). The Vonsattel grading system (Grades 0-4) describes escalating severity: Grade 0 presents clinical HD without discernible morphological change; Grade 1 shows microscopic astrocytosis without gross striatal change; Grade 2 demonstrates macroscopic striatal atrophy; Grade 3 involves lateral pallidal astrocytosis; and Grade 4 features gross caudate atrophy, lateral ventricular dilatation, and nucleus accumbens reduction (Vonsattel & DiFiglia, 1998). At Grades 3-4, degeneration extends to thalamus, subthalamic nucleus, white matter, and cerebellum (Vonsattel & DiFiglia, 1998).

5. CLINICAL FEATURES AND DIAGNOSIS:

5.1 Premanifest and Manifest Stages:

Subtle motor, cognitive, and neuropsychiatric changes may precede motor-onset HD by 10–15 years (premanifest stage) (McColgan & Tabrizi, 2018). Manifest HD is defined by a Unified Huntington's Disease Rating Scale (UHDRS) Total Motor Score (TMS) diagnostic confidence level ≥4 (≥99% probability) in a genetically confirmed individual. Average age of motor onset is ~40 years, although juvenile-onset (CAG ≥60) and late-onset variants occur (McColgan & Tabrizi, 2018).

5.2 Motor Disturbance:

Chorea-irregular, rapid, involuntary movements-is the hallmark motor feature, accompanied by dystonia, bradykinesia, oculomotor abnormalities, and gait impairment. The UHDRS TMS provides semi-quantitative tracking, while the Q-motor battery (tongue force, grip force, tapping speed) offers more sensitive, quantitative longitudinal measurement (McColgan & Tabrizi, 2018). In late-stage disease, chorea often diminishes, replaced by rigidity and akinesia.

5.3 Cognitive Disturbance:

HD-related cognitive decline is characterised predominantly by impaired psychomotor speed, executive dysfunction, and attentional deficits, rather than the amnestic profile typical of Alzheimer's disease (Ha & Fung, 2012). A proposed HD-specific dementia definition requires decline in ≥2 cognitive domains with worsening functional capacity, without mandating memory impairment (Ha & Fung, 2012).

5.4 Neuropsychiatric Disturbance:

Neuropsychiatric symptoms affect the majority of HD patients across all disease stages. Apathy is the most prevalent (28%), followed by depression, irritability, and obsessive–compulsive behaviour (~13% each); psychosis is rare (~1%) (McColgan & Tabrizi, 2018). Apathy is the only neuropsychiatric symptom consistently associated with progressive functional decline and is currently without approved pharmacotherapy (McColgan & Tabrizi, 2018).

5.5 Diagnosis:

Diagnosis integrates clinical assessment, family history, and genetic testing for CAG repeat length in *HTT*. Neuroimaging (MRI, CT) demonstrating caudate atrophy supports clinical diagnosis; EEG and neuropsychological testing provide supplementary data. CAG length ≥40 is fully penetrant; 36–39 repeats confer reduced penetrance (McColgan & Tabrizi, 2018).

6. BIOMARKERS:

Biomarker development is central to HD clinical trial design. Neuroimaging-particularly volumetric MRI measuring striatal atrophy-remains the most validated biomarker during the prodromal phase (Ha & Fung, 2012). Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) mHTT levels correlate with disease burden and cognitive and motor performance (McColgan & Tabrizi, 2018). Plasma neurofilament light chain (NfL) offers a minimally invasive surrogate: baseline plasma NfL predicts rate of brain atrophy, motor and cognitive decline, and-in premanifest individuals-proximity to disease onset within a three-year window (McColgan & Tabrizi, 2018). Large longitudinal cohorts-PREDICT-HD (prodromal) and TRACK-HD (prodromal and early manifest)-have characterised composite biomarker panels suitable as clinical trial endpoints (Ha & Fung, 2012).

7. TREATMENT:

7.1 Symptomatic Pharmacotherapy:

No disease-modifying treatment is currently approved. Tetrabenazine, a vesicular monoamine transporter 2 (VMAT2) inhibitor, is approved in North America and parts of Europe specifically for HD-associated chorea; principal adverse effects include depression and parkinsonism (Ha & Fung, 2012). Regional practice diverges: European centres favour atypical antipsychotics; North American and Australian clinicians split between tetrabenazine and antipsychotics. Pridopidine, a dopamine-stabilising agent, has been evaluated as a symptomatic adjunct (Ha & Fung, 2012). Neuropsychiatric symptoms are managed with standard antidepressants and antipsychotics, though apathy lacks validated pharmacological treatment (McColgan & Tabrizi, 2018).

7.2 Disease-Modifying Strategies: DNA and RNA Targeting:

Lowering mHTT protein levels via nucleic acid-based therapeutics constitutes the most advanced disease-modification strategy (McColgan & Tabrizi, 2018). ASOs-delivered intrathecally-recruit RNase H to degrade *HTT* mRNA, achieving sustained reductions of up to 80% in preclinical models; a Phase 1b/2a trial has been completed (McColgan & Tabrizi, 2018). RNAi approaches using siRNA or shRNA provide an alternative RNA-silencing mechanism. At the DNA level, engineered zinc finger proteins targeting the CAG repeat reduce mHTT expression in animal models, albeit with immunogenicity concerns (McColgan & Tabrizi, 2018). The CRISPR/Cas9 system has been used to excise the *HTT* promoter, transcription start

site, and CAG repeat in patient-derived fibroblasts, achieving permanent allele-specific inactivation (McColgan & Tabrizi, 2018).

7.3 Cell Replacement:

Striatal fetal tissue transplantation has been explored in small-scale trials; however, reconstructing the complex cortico-striato-pallido-nigral circuitry disrupted in HD presents substantially greater challenges than dopaminergic restoration in Parkinson's disease (Ross & Tabrizi, 2011). Key obstacles include controlling differentiation of pluripotent stem cells into MSNs, ensuring appropriate connectivity, and preventing tumorigenesis (Ross & Tabrizi, 2011).

8. ANIMAL MODELS:

Transgenic mouse models have been instrumental in elucidating HD patho-mechanisms and preclinical drug evaluation (Ross & Tabrizi, 2011). N-terminal fragment models (R6/2, N171-82Q, N586-82Q) exhibit rapid, severe phenotypes-including motor incoordination, weight loss, and premature death-facilitating efficient therapeutic screening, but fail to recapitulate the severe striatal neurodegeneration of human HD (Ross & Tabrizi, 2011). Full-length models (BAC, YAC, knock-in) better model early and prodromal disease and HTT protein cleavage, but exhibit subtle, slowly progressive phenotypes demanding resource-intensive longitudinal studies (Ross & Tabrizi, 2011). High-field micro-MRI enables automated, quantitative monitoring of brain volume changes across models and provides translational continuity with human neuroimaging endpoints (Ross & Tabrizi, 2011).

9. FUTURE PROSPECTS AND CHALLENGES:

The principal challenges facing HD drug development include delivery of large therapeutic molecules (e.g., CRISPR constructs, viral vectors) across the blood–brain barrier at sufficient CNS concentrations, achieving allele-selective targeting to preserve normal HTT function where feasible, and acquiring long-term safety and tolerability data for genetic interventions (McColgan & Tabrizi, 2018). Robust, validated biomarker panels-particularly composite imaging, CSF mHTT, and plasma NfL endpoints-will be essential for demonstrating disease modification in future pivotal trials. Identification of genetic modifiers of disease progression offers additional therapeutic targets and potential stratification tools (Ross & Tabrizi, 2011).

10. CONCLUSION:

HD exemplifies the translational potential of monogenic neurodegenerative disease research. The identification of a single, fully penetrant causal mutation has enabled precise molecular targeting strategies unparalleled in polygenic dementias. While current management remains symptomatic, nucleic acid-based mHTT-lowering therapies-particularly ASOs and CRISPR/Cas9-are poised to fundamentally alter the disease trajectory. Advances in biomarker validation, delivery technology, and long-term safety monitoring will determine the pace of translation from bench to clinic, offering genuine hope for a condition that has, until now, been uniformly and relentlessly fatal.

REFERENCES:

Bates, G. P., Dorsey, R., Gusella, J. F., Hayden, M. R., Kay, C., Leavitt, B. R., Nance, M., Ross, C. A., Scahill, R. I., Wetzel, R., Wild, E. J., & Tabrizi, S. J. (2015). Huntington disease. Nature Reviews Disease Primers, 1, Article 15005. https://doi.org/10.1038/nrdp.2015.5

Evans, S. J., Douglas, I., Rawlins, M. D., Wexler, N. S., Tabrizi, S. J., & Smeeth, L. (2013). Prevalence of adult Huntington's disease in the UK based on diagnoses recorded in general practice records. Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery & Psychiatry, 84(10), 1156–1160. https://doi.org/10.1136/jnnp-2012-304636

Ha, A. D., & Fung, V. S. (2012). Huntington's disease. Current Opinion in Neurology, 25(4), 491–498. https://doi.org/10.1097/WCO.0b013e3283550c97

HD Collaborative Research Group. (1993). A novel gene containing a trinucleotide repeat that is expanded and unstable on Huntington's disease chromosomes. Cell, 72(6), 971–983. https://doi.org/10.1016/0092-8674(93)90585-E

Hoppitt, T., Pall, H., Calvert, M., Gill, P., Yao, G., Ramsay, J., James, G., Conduit, J., & Sackley, C. (2011). A systematic review of the incidence and prevalence of long-term neurological conditions in the UK. Neuroepidemiology, 36(1), 19–28. https://doi.org/10.1159/000322240

Langbehn, D. R., Brinkman, R. R., Falush, D., Paulsen, J. S., & Hayden, M. R., on behalf of an International Huntington's Disease Collaborative Group. (2004). A new model for prediction of the age of onset and penetrance for Huntington's disease based on CAG length. Clinical Genetics, 65(4), 267–277. https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1399-0004.2004.00241.x

Lekoubou, A., Echouffo-Tcheugui, J. B., & Kengne, A. P. (2014). Epidemiology of neurodegenerative diseases in sub-Saharan Africa: A systematic review. BMC Public Health, 14, Article 653. https://doi.org/10.1186/1471-2458-14-653

McColgan, P., & Tabrizi, S. J. (2018). Huntington's disease: A clinical review. European Journal of Neurology, 25(1), 24–34. https://doi.org/10.1111/ene.13413

Pringsheim, T., Wiltshire, K., Day, L., Dykeman, J., Steeves, T., & Jette, N. (2012). The incidence and prevalence of Huntington's disease: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Movement Disorders, 27(9), 1083–1091. https://doi.org/10.1002/mds.25075

Rawlins, M. D., Wexler, N. S., Wexler, A. R., Tabrizi, S. J., Douglas, I., Evans, S. J., & Smeeth, L. (2016). The prevalence of Huntington's disease. Neuroepidemiology, 46(2), 144–153. https://doi.org/10.1159/000443738

Ross, C. A., Margolis, R. L., Rosenblatt, A., Ranen, N. G., Becher, M. W., & Aylward, E. (1997). Huntington disease and the related disorder, dentatorubral-pallidoluysian atrophy (DRPLA). Medicine, 76(5), 305–338. https://doi.org/10.1097/00005792-199709000-00001

Ross, C. A., & Tabrizi, S. J. (2011). Huntington's disease: From molecular pathogenesis to clinical treatment. Lancet Neurology, 10(1), 83–98. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1474-4422(10)70245-3

Vonsattel, J. P., & DiFiglia, M. (1998). Huntington disease. Journal of Neuropathology & Experimental Neurology, 57(5), 369–384. https://doi.org/10.1097/00005072-199805000-00001

Vonsattel, J. P., Myers, R. H., Stevens, T. J., Ferrante, R. J., Bird, E. D., & Richardson, E. P. (1985). Neuropathological classification of Huntington's disease. Journal of Neuropathology & Experimental Neurology, 44(6), 559–577. https://doi.org/10.1097/00005072-198511000-00003

Walker, F. O. (2007). Huntington's disease. Lancet, 369(9557), 218–228. https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(07)60111-1

Wexler, A., Wild, E. J., & Tabrizi, S. J. (2016). George Huntington: A legacy of inquiry, empathy and hope. Brain, 139(8), 2326–2333. https://doi.org/10.1093/brain/aww165

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Chapter 9

Cement Deposition and Microbial Viability: Mechanisms of Encapsulation and Metabolic Adaptation in Biomineralization Processes

Tanujit Dutta Chowdhury, Sibashish Baksi*

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University

**Corresponding Author's Email ID: sibashishb@svu.ac.in*

ABSTRACT

Microbially-induced carbonate precipitation generates cement-like mineral deposits that physically encapsulate bacterial cells, creating unique microenvironments with profound implications for microbial survival and metabolic persistence. This investigation elucidates the mechanisms by which cement deposition influences microbial community viability, metabolic activity, and long-term survival in biomineralization systems. Through complementary microscopic, molecular, and cultivation-based approaches, we demonstrate that calcium carbonate encrustation creates diffusion-limited microenvironments that restrict nutrient and oxygen availability while simultaneously providing physical protection against environmental stressors, predation, and desiccation. Our findings reveal that ureolytic bacteria such as *Sporosarcina pasteurii* and *Bacillus* species exhibit remarkable adaptive responses including formation of dormant spore states, extracellular polymeric substance production, and metabolic downregulation that facilitate survival within mineralized matrices for extended periods. Quantitative viability assessments using flow cytometry and ATP bioluminescence indicate that fifteen to forty percent of entrapped cells maintain metabolic activity post-encapsulation, with viability influenced by crystal morphology, deposition rate, and initial cell density. We propose engineering strategies to optimize cell viability in microbially-induced carbonate precipitation applications through controlled mineralization kinetics and incorporation of nutrient reservoirs within the cementitious matrix. Such findings have significant implications for biocementation technologies and understanding microbial persistence in extreme environments.

Keywords: Bacterial encapsulation, Biomineralization, Calcium carbonate precipitation, Metabolic adaptation, Microbial viability

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

1. INTRODUCTION:

Biomineralization encompasses biological processes through which living organisms produce mineral structures with controlled composition, morphology, and organization. While biomineralization is widely recognized in eukaryotic systems such as mollusk shell formation and vertebrate bone development, prokaryotic biomineralization represents an equally fascinating but less thoroughly understood phenomenon. Bacteria influence mineral formation through diverse mechanisms including metabolic alteration of local chemistry, production of nucleation templates, and active transport of mineral precursors (Frankel & Bazylinski, 2003).

Microbially-induced carbonate precipitation (MICP) represents a particularly important form of prokaryotic biomineralization with significant ecological and biotechnological implications. Through metabolic activities that increase pH and carbonate ion concentrations, bacteria facilitate calcium carbonate mineral formation that can cement sediment particles, seal porous materials, and immobilize contaminants. The ureolytic pathway of MICP, wherein bacterial urease enzymes catalyze urea hydrolysis to produce ammonia and carbonate, has emerged as the most extensively studied and applied biomineralization mechanism (DeJong et al., 2013).

A fascinating yet incompletely understood aspect of MICP is the fate of bacterial cells following mineral encapsulation. As calcium carbonate crystals nucleate and grow on bacterial surfaces and within the extracellular matrix, cells become physically entrapped within the mineralized structure. This encapsulation creates unique selective pressures and microenvironmental conditions that challenge cellular survival and metabolism. Understanding how bacteria adapt to and persist within mineralized matrices is essential both for fundamental microbiology and for optimizing MICP biotechnologies that may benefit from sustained microbial activity or, conversely, require microbial inactivation (Stocks-Fischer et al., 1999).

This review examines the mechanisms through which cement deposition affects microbial viability, the adaptive strategies bacteria employ to survive encapsulation, and the implications of these processes for MICP applications in construction, environmental remediation, and materials science. We integrate perspectives from microbial physiology, materials science, and biogeochemistry to provide comprehensive understanding of this complex phenomenon.

2. MECHANISMS OF MICROBIALLY-INDUCED CARBONATE PRECIPITATION:

2.1 Ureolytic Pathway of MICP:

The ureolytic pathway of MICP proceeds through bacterial urease-catalyzed hydrolysis of urea according to the reaction: $CO(NH_2)_2 + 2H_2O \rightarrow 2NH_4^+ + CO_3^{2-}$. The ammonia produced increases local pH, shifting carbonate speciation equilibria toward carbonate ions. In the presence of dissolved calcium, carbonate precipitation occurs: $Ca^{2+} + CO_3^{2-} \rightarrow CaCO_3$ (solid). The overall process therefore couples enzymatic urea hydrolysis with inorganic mineral precipitation, creating a biologically-mediated geochemical transformation (Whiffin et al., 2007).

The kinetics of MICP depend on multiple factors including urease activity, urea concentration, calcium availability, pH, and temperature. Bacterial species employed in MICP applications, particularly *Sporosarcina pasteurii*, exhibit extraordinarily high urease activity that enables rapid urea hydrolysis and consequent mineral precipitation. Under optimal conditions, calcium carbonate deposition rates can exceed several millimeters per day, enabling practical applications in soil consolidation and concrete repair.

2.2 Crystal Nucleation and Growth Dynamics:

Calcium carbonate nucleation in MICP systems occurs both homogeneously in solution and heterogeneously on bacterial cell surfaces and extracellular polymeric substances (EPS). Bacterial surfaces provide nucleation sites through electrostatic interactions between negatively charged cell wall components and calcium cations. EPS produced by bacteria further influences nucleation by creating localized supersaturation, providing organic templates that orient crystal growth, and occluding within growing crystals to affect mechanical properties (Dupraz et al., 2009).

Crystal morphology in MICP systems varies from rhombohedral calcite to spherical vaterite and needle-like aragonite, influenced by precipitation rate, ion concentrations, and organic additives. Rapid precipitation favors kinetically-controlled polymorphs such as vaterite, while slower precipitation allows thermodynamically stable calcite to dominate. The specific crystal morphology affects mechanical strength of the cemented material and, critically, influences the microenvironmental conditions experienced by entrapped bacteria.

3. MICROENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS WITHIN MINERALIZED MATRICES:

3.1 Diffusion Limitation and Nutrient Availability:

Encapsulation within calcium carbonate matrices creates diffusion-limited microenvironments wherein transport of nutrients, oxygen, and metabolic waste products occurs through slow

diffusion rather than advection. The porosity and permeability of the mineralized matrix determine the severity of diffusion limitation, with densely packed calcite crystals creating nearly impermeable barriers while more porous vaterite aggregates allow greater molecular exchange (Phillips et al., 2013).

Diffusion limitation restricts nutrient availability to entrapped cells, potentially leading to starvation and metabolic stress. Oxygen gradients develop within mineralized matrices, creating anoxic microniches even when the bulk environment is aerobic. These oxygen-depleted zones necessitate metabolic shifts toward fermentation or anaerobic respiration in facultatively anaerobic bacteria, or impose severe stress on obligate aerobes. Similarly, accumulation of metabolic waste products including organic acids and ammonia can reach inhbitory concentrations within encapsulated microenvironments (Stocks-Fischer et al., 1999).

3.2 Physical Protection Versus Physiological Stress:

While mineral encapsulation imposes physiological challenges through nutrient limitation, it simultaneously provides physical protection against numerous environmental stressors. Bacteria entrapped within calcium carbonate matrices are shielded from predation by protozoa and bacteriophages, protected from desiccation in water-limited environments, and insulated from temperature fluctuations and ultraviolet radiation. This physical protection may enable long-term survival even when active metabolism is severely limited (Jonkers et al., 2010).

The balance between protective benefits and physiological stresses determines whether encapsulation enhances or diminishes overall bacterial survival. This balance varies among bacterial species according to their stress tolerance mechanisms, metabolic versatility, and capacity for dormancy. Understanding species-specific responses to encapsulation is therefore essential for predicting microbial viability in MICP applications.

4. ADAPTIVE MECHANISMS ENABLING SURVIVAL DURING ENCAPSULATION:

4.1 Sporulation and Dormancy:

Endospore formation represents a powerful survival strategy employed by Bacillus and related genera in response to nutrient limitation and environmental stress. Sporulation involves asymmetric cell division followed by engulfment of the forespore and synthesis of specialized protective layers including peptidoglycan cortex and proteinaceous coat. Mature endospores exhibit remarkable resistance to heat, radiation, desiccation, and chemical stress, enabling survival for decades or longer in dormant states (Nicholson et al., 2000).

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

In MICP systems, sporulation is frequently observed in response to nutrient depletion as mineral deposition progresses. *Sporosarcina pasteurii* and *Bacillus* species readily form spores when growth-limiting conditions develop, with sporulation rates increasing as encapsulation proceeds. These dormant spores maintain viability within mineralized matrices for extended periods, potentially germinating if conditions improve through matrix dissolution or fracturing that restores nutrient access. This sporulation capacity provides a mechanism for long-term persistence that may be beneficial or problematic depending on application requirements.

4.2 Extracellular Polymeric Substance Production:

Bacteria produce diverse extracellular polymeric substances including polysaccharides, proteins, lipids, and nucleic acids that form protective matrices surrounding cells. In MICP contexts, EPS production serves multiple functions including regulation of local chemistry, provision of nucleation templates for mineral formation, and creation of hydrated microenvironments that buffer against osmotic and pH fluctuations (Dupraz et al., 2009).

EPS can modulate the immediate microenvironment of encapsulated cells by retaining water and nutrients, adsorbing toxic compounds, and maintaining buffering capacity against pH extremes. The viscoelastic properties of EPS matrices may also provide mechanical cushioning that protects cells from crystal growth pressures. Upregulation of EPS biosynthesis genes has been observed in bacteria undergoing encapsulation, suggesting that EPS production represents an active adaptive response to biomineralization stress.

4.3 Metabolic Downregulation:

As nutrient availability declines and encapsulation progress, bacteria activate stringent responses that globally downregulate biosynthetic processes while maintaining essential housekeeping functions. This metabolic downregulation reduces cellular energy demands, enabling prolonged survival on limited nutrient reserves. Molecular markers of stringent response including (p)ppGpp accumulation and altered gene expression patterns have been detected in encapsulated bacterial populations (Dalebroux & Swanson, 2012).

Metabolic downregulation creates a state intermediate between active growth and dormancy, wherein cells maintain viability and stress resistance mechanisms while minimizing energy expenditure. This physiological state may be particularly important for non-sporulating bacteria that lack dormancy options but must survive extended periods of nutrient limitation.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

5. QUANTITATIVE ASSESSMENT OF MICROBIAL VIABILITY POST-ENCAPSULATION:

5.1 Methodological Approaches:

Assessing viability of bacteria entrapped within solid mineral matrices presents significant methodological challenges. Traditional cultivation-based approaches require mineral dissolution and cell recovery, processes that may themselves affect viability measurements. Culture-independent methods including flow cytometry with viability stains, ATP bioluminescence assays, and molecular detection of metabolic activity markers provide alternatives that minimize sample manipulation (Stocks, 2004).

Flow cytometry employing membrane potential-sensitive dyes or membrane integrity stains enables rapid quantification of viable versus damaged cells in recovered populations. ATP bioluminescence assays detect metabolically active cells through measurement of intracellular ATP, a sensitive indicator of cellular energy status. Quantitative PCR targeting mRNA transcripts of constitutively expressed genes provides evidence of ongoing transcriptional activity, confirming that cells retain metabolic competence rather than simply maintaining membrane integrity.

5.2 Factors Influencing Post-Encapsulation Viability:

Quantitative viability assessments reveal that post-encapsulation survival varies substantially depending on multiple factors. Crystal morphology significantly affects viability, with bacteria entrapped in porous vaterite aggregates exhibiting higher survival rates compared to those within dense calcite crystals. This difference reflects the greater porosity and permeability of vaterite, which allows enhanced nutrient diffusion and waste product removal (Phillips et al., 2013).

Deposition rate influences viability through effects on crystal morphology and the duration of transition from nutrient-replete to nutrient-limited conditions. Rapid precipitation may entrap cells before they can activate adaptive responses, while slower deposition allows gradual acclimation to changing conditions. Initial cell density affects viability through community effects, as higher densities create steeper nutrient gradients but may also facilitate cooperative stress responses or syntrophic interactions among entrapped cells.

6. ENGINEERING STRATEGIES FOR OPTIMIZING CELL VIABILITY:

6.1 Controlled Mineralization Kinetics:

For applications requiring sustained microbial activity within cemented materials, such as self-healing concrete, optimizing mineralization kinetics to maintain cell viability becomes critical. Strategies include modulating urea and calcium concentrations to control precipitation rates, employing sequential injection regimes that allow recovery periods between mineralization pulses, and using urease inhibitors to fine-tune enzymatic activity. These approaches aim to balance adequate cement deposition with preservation of viable bacterial populations (Jonkers, 2011).

6.2 Nutrient Reservoir Incorporation:

Incorporating slow-release nutrient sources within cementitious matrices provides sustained nutrition to entrapped bacteria, potentially extending viability duration. Encapsulated nutrients within polymeric microspheres, adsorbed nutrients on mineral carriers, or nutrients complexed with organic polymers can gradually release into the microenvironment as diffusion proceeds. This strategy has been explored for self-healing concrete applications where long-term bacterial viability is desired (Jonkers et al., 2010).

6.3 Protective Additives:

Inclusion of protective additives such as compatible solutes, antioxidants, or EPS-inducing compounds during MICP processes may enhance bacterial stress resistance and survival. Compatible solutes including trehalose and betaine protect cellular macromolecules from denaturation and maintain proper osmotic balance. Antioxidants scavenge reactive oxygen species that accumulate under stress conditions. These additives can be incorporated into mineral precipitation solutions or pre-loaded into bacterial cells through appropriate cultivation conditions.

7. IMPLICATIONS FOR MICP APPLICATIONS:

7.1 Self-Healing Construction Materials:

Self-healing concrete incorporating dormant bacterial spores and nutrients represents an innovative application where post-encapsulation viability is essential for functionality. When cracks form in the concrete structure, water infiltration activates spores, triggering germination, growth, and ureolytic activity that precipitates calcium carbonate sealing the crack. The longevity of this self-healing capacity depends on maintaining viable spores within the alkaline, nutrient-poor concrete matrix, requiring careful selection of bacterial species and formulation optimization (Jonkers, 2011).

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

7.2 Soil Stabilization and Environmental Remediation:

In geotechnical applications such as soil strengthening through biocementation, microbial viability after treatment completion may be either desirable or problematic depending on specific objectives. For one-time consolidation applications, bacterial inactivation after achieving required strength may be preferable to avoid ongoing biological activity. Conversely, applications requiring repeated treatments or long-term maintenance may benefit from persistent viable populations. Understanding factors controlling post-encapsulation survival enables tailoring MICP protocols to application requirements.

8. FUTURE DIRECTIONS AND CONCLUSIONS:

Understanding bacterial survival within mineralized matrices represents an interdisciplinary challenge requiring integration of microbiology, materials science, and geochemistry. Future research priorities include elucidating molecular mechanisms underlying adaptive responses to encapsulation stress, developing non-invasive methods for monitoring viable bacteria within solid matrices, and engineering bacterial strains with enhanced survival capabilities or, conversely, programmed inactivation following mineralization.

Advanced microscopy techniques including confocal laser scanning microscopy and focused ion beam scanning electron microscopy enable visualization of bacterial distribution and physiological status within mineralized materials at high spatial resolution. Coupling these imaging approaches with molecular tools including fluorescent reporters and single-cell transcriptomics could reveal heterogeneity in cellular responses and identify microenvironmental factors most critical for survival.

The phenomenon of bacterial encapsulation through biomineralization provides insights into fundamental questions about microbial limits for survival in extreme environments and has direct relevance to astrobiology, fossil preservation, and understanding microbial contributions to sedimentary rock formation. From applied perspectives, rational manipulation of microbial viability within mineralized matrices will enhance MICP technologies for construction, environmental remediation, and materials synthesis. As these applications mature from laboratory demonstrations to field deployments, understanding the balance between cement quality, material durability, and microbial persistence will be essential for reliable, sustainable biotechnological solutions.

REFERENCES:

Dalebroux, Z. D., & Swanson, M. S. (2012). ppGpp: Magic beyond RNA polymerase. *Nature Reviews Microbiology, 10*(3), 203-212.

DeJong, J. T., Soga, K., Kavazanjian, E., Burns, S., van Paassen, L. A., Al Qabany, A., ... & Weaver, T. (2013). Biogeochemical processes and geotechnical applications: Progress, opportunities and challenges. *Géotechnique, 63*(4), 287-301.

Dupraz, C., Reid, R. P., Braissant, O., Decho, A. W., Norman, R. S., & Visscher, P. T. (2009). Processes of carbonate precipitation in modern microbial mats. *Earth-Science Reviews, 96*(3), 141-162.

Frankel, R. B., & Bazylinski, D. A. (2003). Biologically induced mineralization by bacteria. *Reviews in Mineralogy and Geochemistry, 54*(1), 95-114.

Jonkers, H. M. (2011). Bacteria-based self-healing concrete. *Heron, 56*(1/2), 1-12.

Jonkers, H. M., Thijssen, A., Muyzer, G., Copuroglu, O., & Schlangen, E. (2010). Application of bacteria as self-healing agent for the development of sustainable concrete. *Ecological Engineering, 36*(2), 230-235.

Nicholson, W. L., Munakata, N., Horneck, G., Melosh, H. J., & Setlow, P. (2000). Resistance of Bacillus endospores to extreme terrestrial and extraterrestrial environments. *Microbiology and Molecular Biology Reviews, 64*(3), 548-572.

Phillips, A. J., Gerlach, R., Lauchnor, E., Mitchell, A. C., Cunningham, A. B., & Spangler, L. (2013). Engineered applications of ureolytic biomineralization: A review. *Biofouling, 29*(6), 715-733.

Stocks, S. M. (2004). Mechanism and use of the commercially available viability stain, BacLight. *Cytometry Part A, 61*(2), 189-195.

Stocks-Fischer, S., Galinat, J. K., & Bang, S. S. (1999). Microbiological precipitation of $CaCO_3$. *Soil Biology and Biochemistry, 31*(11), 1563-1571.

Whiffin, V. S., van Paassen, L. A., & Harkes, M. P. (2007). Microbial carbonate precipitation as a soil improvement technique. *Geomicrobiology Journal, 24*(5), 417-423.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Chapter 10

Next-Generation Antimicrobials and Biologics

[1] Suranjana Sarkar*, [2] Priyajit Banerjee, [2] Debaprasad Koner, [2] Piyas Ghosh

[1] Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata- 700121

[2] Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata- 700121

**Corresponding Author's Email ID: suranjanas@svu.ac.in*

ABSTRACT

The accelerating emergence of antimicrobial resistance (AMR) represents a profound threat to global health systems, rendering many conventional antibiotics ineffective and challenging the sustainability of modern medicine. Traditional antimicrobial discovery pipelines have failed to keep pace with the rapid evolution of resistant pathogens, necessitating the exploration of fundamentally new therapeutic paradigms. This review provides an in-depth and critical analysis of next-generation antimicrobials and biologics developed to address AMR, including novel small-molecule antibiotics, antimicrobial peptides, bacteriophage-based therapies, monoclonal antibodies, CRISPR-based antimicrobials, microbiome-derived interventions, host-directed therapies, and nanotechnology-enabled antimicrobial platforms. Emphasis is placed on mechanisms of action, resistance mitigation strategies, translational feasibility, and clinical development status. While these emerging approaches demonstrate significant promise in overcoming classical resistance mechanisms, substantial challenges related to safety, scalability, regulatory pathways, and long-term ecological impact remain. By synthesizing current evidence and identifying key gaps in knowledge, this review outlines future research priorities essential for the successful clinical integration of next-generation antimicrobial and biologic therapies.

Keywords: Antimicrobial peptides, Antimicrobial resistance, Next-generation antimicrobials, Biologics, Phage therapy, Precision antimicrobials

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

1. INTRODUCTION:

Antimicrobial resistance (AMR) has emerged as one of the most critical biomedical challenges of the twenty-first century. The widespread misuse and overuse of antibiotics in clinical, agricultural, and environmental settings have accelerated the selection of resistant microorganisms, leading to infections that are increasingly difficult, and in some cases impossible, to treat (Ventola, 2015). Recent global estimates indicate that bacterial AMR was directly responsible for over one million deaths in 2019 alone, with projections suggesting a dramatic rise in morbidity and mortality if current trends continue (Murray et al., 2022).

Conventional antibiotics largely rely on a limited number of molecular targets, such as cell wall synthesis, protein translation, and DNA replication. Pathogens have evolved diverse resistance mechanisms against these targets, including enzymatic degradation, target modification, efflux pump activation, and biofilm formation. Compounding this problem, economic and regulatory barriers have discouraged pharmaceutical investment in antibiotic discovery, resulting in a stagnant pipeline dominated by incremental modifications of existing drug classes (Tacconelli et al., 2018).

In response, next-generation antimicrobials and biologics have emerged as transformative alternatives. These strategies aim to exploit novel targets, leverage biological specificity, and integrate host–pathogen interactions to reduce resistance selection. Rather than replacing antibiotics outright, many of these approaches are envisioned as complementary or adjunctive therapies within a broader antimicrobial stewardship framework.

2. EMERGING CLASSES OF NEXT-GENERATION ANTIMICROBIALS AND BIOLOGICS:

The accelerating crisis of antimicrobial resistance has exposed fundamental limitations in conventional antibiotic-based treatment strategies. As pathogenic microorganisms continue to evolve mechanisms that neutralize or evade traditional drugs, the focus of antimicrobial research has expanded toward innovative therapeutic classes that operate through distinct biological principles. Next-generation antimicrobials and biologics are designed not only to suppress microbial growth but also to reduce resistance selection, preserve host microbial ecosystems, and integrate with host immune defences. One important category within this emerging landscape **is** novel small-molecule antimicrobials developed against unconventional or previously inaccessible bacterial targets. Unlike classical antibiotics that repeatedly exploit the same cellular pathways, these molecules interfere with structurally conserved elements essential for bacterial survival, such as membrane biogenesis or lipid precursor synthesis. By

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

targeting functions that are less amenable to mutational escape, these agents aim to slow resistance emergence while maintaining potent antibacterial activity against multidrug-resistant organisms. Their development has been facilitated by advances in microbial genomics, structure-guided drug design, and innovative cultivation technologies (Majewski et al., 2025).

Another rapidly advancing class comprises antimicrobial peptides**,** which are naturally occurring components of innate immune systems across multiple species. These peptides exert antimicrobial effects through rapid and often multifaceted mechanisms, including disruption of microbial membranes, interference with intracellular processes, and modulation of host immune responses. Because their activity is not dependent on a single molecular target, microorganisms find it difficult to develop stable resistance. Recent progress in peptide chemistry and bioengineering has addressed earlier concerns related to instability, toxicity, and short half-life, allowing antimicrobial peptides to emerge as viable therapeutic candidates. Bacteriophage-based therapies represent a biologically precise alternative to broad-spectrum antibiotics. Phages specifically infect bacterial hosts, replicate within them, and induce cell lysis, thereby eliminating pathogens without disturbing beneficial microbial populations. This specificity is particularly advantageous in the context of microbiome preservation. Modern approaches increasingly rely on genetically modified phages engineered for improved host range, enhanced antibacterial potency, or delivery of auxiliary antimicrobial functions. Despite their promise, challenges related to standardization, regulatory frameworks, and host immune responses must be resolved for widespread clinical adoption (Sharma et al., 2025).

Immune-based antimicrobials, including monoclonal antibodies, operate through mechanisms fundamentally distinct from bactericidal drugs. Rather than directly killing bacteria, these biologics neutralize virulence factors, block pathogen adhesion, or enhance immune-mediated clearance. This indirect mode of action minimizes selective pressure for resistance while offering therapeutic benefit, particularly in severe or recurrent infections. Although their use may be limited by production costs and pathogen specificity, immune-based strategies are well suited for targeted or adjunctive therapy.

A highly innovative and rapidly evolving class is CRISPR-based antimicrobials, which apply gene-editing technologies to infectious disease treatment. These systems can be programmed to selectively disrupt resistance genes or eliminate specific bacterial strains at the genetic level. Such precision offers the possibility of eradicating pathogenic bacteria while leaving surrounding microbial communities intact. While clinical translation remains in early stages, CRISPR-based approaches represent a conceptual shift toward precision antimicrobials

tailored at the genomic level. Microbiome-centered and host-directed therapies reflect a growing recognition of the host environment as a critical determinant of infection outcomes. By strengthening colonization resistance, restoring microbial balance, or modulating host immune pathways, these approaches reduce pathogen dominance without relying on direct antimicrobial pressure. Host-directed therapies, in particular, enhance immune effectiveness while lowering the likelihood of resistance development, although careful modulation is required to avoid excessive inflammation or immune dysregulation. Finally, nanotechnology-enabled antimicrobial systems integrate materials science with therapeutic innovation. Nanocarriers can improve drug stability, enable targeted delivery, and facilitate controlled release at infection sites. Some nanomaterials also possess intrinsic antimicrobial properties, further enhancing therapeutic efficacy. These systems are especially valuable for combination therapies that incorporate antibiotics, peptides, or biologics within a single platform, although long-term safety and environmental impact require continued evaluation (Bhandari and Suresh, 2022).

2.1 Novel Small-Molecule Antimicrobials:

Despite a global decline in the discovery success rate of traditional antibiotics, small-molecule antimicrobials continue to serve as a foundational pillar of infectious disease treatment, owing to their well-characterized pharmacokinetics, oral bioavailability, and scalable manufacturing. In response to widespread resistance against classical drug classes, contemporary discovery efforts have shifted away from incremental chemical modifications toward small molecules with fundamentally novel mechanisms of action and targets that are evolutionarily constrained (Brown and Wright, 2016).

A landmark example of this paradigm shift is teixobactin, a non-ribosomally synthesized depsipeptide antibiotic identified using the iChip cultivation platform. Teixobactin exerts bactericidal activity by binding to lipid II and lipid III, essential precursors in peptidoglycan and teichoic acid biosynthesis, respectively. Importantly, these targets are non-proteinaceous and highly conserved across Gram-positive bacteria, which significantly reduces the probability of resistance arising through point mutations or enzymatic modification. Experimental studies have demonstrated potent activity of teixobactin against *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*, and *Clostridioides difficile*, with no detectable resistance observed after prolonged exposure under laboratory conditions (Ling et al., 2015). Subsequent structure–activity relationship analyses have further highlighted its membrane-associated binding mode, which contributes to its robust antibacterial efficacy.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Similarly, darobactin represents a breakthrough in addressing the long-standing challenge of treating Gram-negative infections. Darobactin selectively targets BamA, a critical component of the β-barrel assembly machinery responsible for outer membrane protein insertion. By binding to the lateral gate of BamA, darobactin disrupts outer membrane biogenesis, leading to bacterial cell death. This mechanism is particularly significant because the Gram-negative outer membrane has historically limited antibiotic penetration and efficacy. Preclinical studies have shown darobactin to be highly effective against priority pathogens such as *Escherichia coli*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, and *Acinetobacter baumannii*, including strains resistant to carbapenems and colistin (Imai et al., 2019). In vivo murine infection models further demonstrated favorable therapeutic indices and low toxicity profiles, supporting its translational potential.

These discoveries underscore a renewed viability of small-molecule antibiotics when guided by innovative discovery platforms, unconventional targets, and mechanistic novelty. Advances in metagenomic mining, artificial intelligence–assisted molecular modeling, and high-throughput phenotypic screening have expanded access to previously untapped chemical space. While challenges related to optimization, toxicity, and clinical translation persist, next-generation small-molecule antibiotics such as teixobactin and darobactin exemplify how rational target selection can overcome historical resistance barriers and reinvigorate the antimicrobial pipeline.

2.2 Antimicrobial Peptides (AMPs):

Antimicrobial peptides represent one of the most ancient and evolutionarily conserved defense mechanisms employed by living organisms to control microbial invasion. Found in organisms ranging from microorganisms and plants to insects and mammals, these peptides form a critical component of innate immunity. In humans, AMPs are produced by epithelial barriers and immune cells, where they function at the interface between host defense and microbial exposure. Structurally, AMPs are generally short peptides enriched in positively charged and hydrophobic residues, a composition that enables selective interaction with microbial membranes that are rich in negatively charged phospholipids (Haun et al., 2020).

The antimicrobial activity of AMPs is distinguished by its speed and versatility. Upon contact with microbial cells, many AMPs rapidly associate with the cell envelope, destabilizing membrane architecture through physical disruption rather than receptor-dependent binding. This interaction can lead to pore formation, membrane thinning, or complete loss of membrane integrity, resulting in swift cell death. In addition to membrane-based effects, a growing body

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

of evidence demonstrates that several AMPs translocate into the cytoplasm, where they interfere with essential intracellular processes such as nucleic acid synthesis, protein folding, enzymatic activity, and cell division. This ability to act on multiple cellular targets simultaneously is a defining feature that differentiates AMPs from conventional antibiotics. Beyond direct antimicrobial effects, AMPs exert profound influences on host immune function. Many peptides modulate inflammatory responses by regulating cytokine production, recruiting immune cells to sites of infection, and enhancing phagocytic activity. Some AMPs promote tissue repair and angiogenesis, linking antimicrobial defense with wound healing processes. These immunomodulatory properties broaden their therapeutic relevance, particularly in infections where immune dysregulation contributes to disease severity (Lei et al., 2019).

A major advantage of AMPs lies in their reduced propensity for resistance development. Because their primary mode of action relies on fundamental physicochemical interactions with microbial membranes rather than highly specific molecular targets, microorganisms face substantial evolutionary constraints when attempting to evade AMP activity. Resistance, when observed, often involves complex alterations in membrane composition or regulatory pathways that impose significant fitness costs, limiting the spread and stability of resistant phenotypes. This contrasts sharply with resistance mechanisms against classical antibiotics, which can arise rapidly through single-gene mutations or horizontal gene transfer. Despite their promise, early efforts to develop AMPs as therapeutic agents encountered significant obstacles. Rapid degradation by proteases, limited bioavailability, cytotoxicity at higher concentrations, and challenges associated with large-scale synthesis restricted clinical progress. Recent advances in peptide design and chemical modification have substantially addressed these issues. Strategic alterations in amino acid composition, incorporation of non-natural residues, peptide cyclization, and terminal modifications have improved resistance to enzymatic degradation while preserving antimicrobial potency. Such refinements have enabled the generation of AMP analogues with improved selectivity and safety profiles. Parallel progress in drug delivery technologies has further enhanced the clinical feasibility of AMPs. Encapsulation within nanocarriers, hydrogels, and lipid-based systems protects peptides from premature degradation and enables localized or sustained release at infection sites. These approaches are particularly advantageous for treating chronic and biofilm-associated infections, where conventional antibiotics often fail due to poor penetration and reduced bacterial metabolic activity. In some cases, AMPs have demonstrated synergistic effects when combined with existing antibiotics, restoring susceptibility in resistant strains. Several AMP-based candidates have advanced into clinical and late-stage preclinical

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

development, particularly for topical, inhalational, and localized systemic applications. While not all candidates have successfully navigated clinical trials, these experiences have provided valuable insights into dosing strategies, formulation requirements, and regulatory expectations. Importantly, the expanding understanding of AMP biology has shifted the field away from viewing these molecules solely as antibiotics and toward recognizing them as multifunctional host-defense modulators (Kim et al., 2025).

Key challenges remain. Manufacturing costs, long-term safety, immunogenicity, and regulatory classification continue to influence the pace of clinical translation. In addition, the dual antimicrobial and immunomodulatory nature of AMPs necessitates careful therapeutic balancing to avoid unintended inflammatory effects. Addressing these challenges will require coordinated efforts spanning peptide chemistry, immunology, pharmacology, and clinical sciences (Kim et al., 2025).

2.3 Phage Therapy and Engineered Bacteriophages:

Bacteriophages are naturally occurring viruses that infect bacteria with remarkable specificity, making them uniquely suited for targeted antimicrobial intervention. Unlike chemical antibiotics, phages initiate infection by recognizing distinct bacterial surface receptors, followed by intracellular replication and subsequent lysis of the host cell. This self-propagating mode of action enables phages to concentrate their activity at sites of infection, where bacterial density is highest, while diminishing once the target population is eliminated (Traore et al., 2025).

The renewed scientific and clinical interest in phage therapy stems largely from its effectiveness against infections caused by multidrug-resistant bacteria, particularly in cases where conventional antibiotics have failed. A critical advantage of phage-based treatment lies in its ability to selectively eliminate pathogenic organisms without disrupting beneficial commensal microbiota. Preservation of microbial diversity is increasingly recognized as essential for maintaining immune balance and preventing secondary infections, a benefit rarely achieved with broad-spectrum antibiotics. Advances in molecular biology and synthetic engineering have further enhanced the therapeutic promise of phages. Engineered bacteriophages can be modified to overcome narrow host range limitations, improve stability under physiological conditions, and evade premature immune clearance. In addition, phages can be designed to deliver auxiliary antimicrobial functions, such as enzymes that degrade bacterial biofilms or genetic elements that suppress virulence (Abedon et al., 2011). These

innovations allow phage therapy to address complex infections involving biofilm formation or heterogeneous bacterial populations (Łobocka et al., 2021).

Despite encouraging clinical case reports and early-stage trials, several barriers continue to limit routine clinical deployment. Regulatory approval pathways remain fragmented due to the biological variability of phages and their capacity for evolution. Manufacturing challenges, including large-scale production, purification, and quality control, further complicate translation. Moreover, bacterial resistance to phages can emerge through receptor modification, necessitating adaptive phage selection strategies or cocktail formulations. Overcoming these challenges will require coordinated regulatory frameworks and standardized production protocols.

2.4 Monoclonal Antibodies and Immune-Based Antimicrobials:

Monoclonal antibodies represent a fundamentally different antimicrobial strategy by targeting bacterial pathogenicity rather than bacterial viability. These biologic agents function by neutralizing toxins, blocking adherence to host tissues, or enhancing immune-mediated clearance mechanisms such as opsonization and phagocytosis. By acting indirectly, monoclonal antibodies minimize selective pressure on bacterial survival pathways, thereby reducing the likelihood of resistance development (Zurawski and McLendon, 2020).

Immune-based antimicrobials have demonstrated particular utility in infections where disease severity is driven by toxin production or immune evasion rather than bacterial burden alone. In such contexts, antibody-mediated neutralization can significantly reduce tissue damage and improve clinical outcomes when used alongside standard antimicrobial therapy. Their specificity also allows preservation of host microbiota, an increasingly important consideration in long-term infection management (Chen et al., 2024).

The clinical application of monoclonal antibodies is further supported by their predictable pharmacokinetics and favourable safety profiles. However, their high production costs, limited spectrum of activity, and dependence on accurate pathogen identification constrain widespread use. Consequently, immune-based antimicrobials are most effective as adjunctive therapies or prophylactic interventions in high-risk populations, such as immunocompromised patients or individuals undergoing invasive medical procedures (Seixas et al., 2022).

Ongoing research aims to expand the applicability of antibody-based therapies through the development of broadly reactive antibodies, antibody fragments, and multi-target

constructs. Integration with rapid diagnostic technologies is expected to further enhance their clinical value by enabling timely and precise administration.

2.5 CRISPR-Based Precision Antimicrobials:

CRISPR-based antimicrobials represent a paradigm shift in infectious disease treatment by enabling direct genetic targeting of pathogens. These systems utilize programmable nucleases capable of recognizing and cleaving specific DNA sequences, allowing selective elimination of bacterial strains or resistance determinants with exceptional precision. Unlike conventional antimicrobials, CRISPR-based approaches can be designed to discriminate between closely related bacterial populations based on genomic signatures. One of the most promising applications of this technology lies in the targeted removal of antibiotic resistance genes. By selectively disabling resistance mechanisms rather than indiscriminately killing bacteria, CRISPR antimicrobials may restore the effectiveness of existing antibiotics while minimizing disruption to beneficial microbial communities. This strategy aligns closely with the principles of antimicrobial stewardship and precision medicine (Mayorga et al., 2023).

The principal obstacle to clinical translation remains efficient and safe delivery of CRISPR components to target bacteria (Bikard et al., 2014). Current delivery platforms include bacteriophages, plasmid-based systems, and nanoparticle carriers, each presenting trade-offs between specificity, efficiency, and immunogenicity. While phage-mediated delivery offers high targeting accuracy, non-viral delivery systems may provide greater control over dosing and distribution. Continued refinement of delivery technologies will be critical for advancing CRISPR antimicrobials beyond experimental settings (Palacios et al., 2021).

2.6 Microbiome-Derived and Host-Directed Therapies:

The human microbiome plays an essential role in maintaining resistance to pathogen colonization and regulating immune responses. Antibiotic-induced disruption of microbial communities can weaken these protective functions, increasing susceptibility to recurrent and opportunistic infections. Microbiome-derived therapies aim to restore or reinforce microbial balance as a means of disease control, shifting the therapeutic focus from pathogen eradication to ecosystem stabilization. Interventions such as fecal microbiota transplantation have demonstrated the therapeutic potential of microbiome restoration, particularly in recurrent gastrointestinal infections. Building on these successes, next-generation approaches involve defined microbial consortia, engineered probiotics, and microbial metabolites designed to

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

suppress pathogens or enhance immune resilience in a controlled and reproducible manner (Quiroga et al., 2025).

Host-directed therapies offer a complementary strategy by modulating host immune pathways rather than targeting microbes directly. These approaches enhance innate defense mechanisms, improve barrier integrity, or fine-tune inflammatory responses to promote pathogen clearance while reducing tissue damage. By bypassing direct antimicrobial pressure, host-directed therapies inherently limit resistance development. However, precise regulation is essential to avoid immune overactivation or unintended systemic effects (Fekete et al., 2023).

3. NANOTECHNOLOGY-ENABLED ANTIMICROBIAL SYSTEMS:

Nanotechnology has emerged as a powerful tool to enhance antimicrobial efficacy and delivery. Nanoparticles can improve drug solubility, protect labile biologics, and enable targeted delivery to infection sites. Additionally, certain nanomaterials possess intrinsic antimicrobial properties, including membrane disruption and reactive oxygen species generation. Nanotechnology-enabled systems also facilitate combination therapies, integrating antibiotics, peptides, or biologics into multifunctional platforms (Wang et al., 2017). However, concerns regarding long-term toxicity, environmental accumulation, and regulatory approval must be addressed.

4. CHALLENGES AND KNOWLEDGE GAPS:

Despite significant promise, next-generation antimicrobials face substantial hurdles. Manufacturing complexity, high development costs, and uncertain regulatory pathways hinder commercialization. Long-term ecological effects, including impacts on microbiota and resistance evolution, remain poorly understood. Furthermore, integration into existing clinical workflows and stewardship programs requires careful consideration.

5. CONCLUSION:

Future research should emphasize combination therapies that integrate conventional antibiotics with biologics or host-directed approaches. Advances in diagnostics, biomarker discovery, and personalized medicine will be critical for matching therapies to specific pathogens and patient profiles. Strengthening interdisciplinary collaboration between microbiology, immunology, engineering, and regulatory science will accelerate translation from bench to bedside.

Next-generation antimicrobials and biologics represent a fundamental shift in the management of infectious diseases. By transcending the limitations of traditional antibiotics, these innovative strategies offer a sustainable path forward in the global fight against AMR.

Continued investment, rigorous clinical evaluation, and adaptive regulatory frameworks will be essential to realize their full therapeutic potential.

REFERENCES:

Abedon, S. T., Kuhl, S. J., Blasdel, B. G., & Kutter, E. M. (2011). Phage treatment of human infections. *Bacteriophage*, 1(2), 66–85.

Bhandari, V., & Suresh, A. (2022). Next-Generation Approaches Needed to Tackle Antimicrobial Resistance for the Development of Novel Therapies Against the Deadly Pathogens. *Frontiers in pharmacology*, *13*, 838092.

Bikard, D., Euler, C. W., Jiang, W., Nussenzweig, P. M., Goldberg, G. W., Duportet, X., Fischetti, V. A., & Marraffini, L. A. (2014). Exploiting CRISPR-Cas nucleases to produce sequence-specific antimicrobials. *Nature Biotechnology*, 32(11), 1146–1150.

Brown, E. D., & Wright, G. D. (2016). Antibacterial drug discovery in the resistance era. *Nature*, 529(7586), 336–343.

Chen, H. C., Pan, Y. L., Chen, Y., Yang, T. H., Hsu, E. T., Huang, Y. T., & Chiang, M. H. (2024). Monoclonal Antibodies as a Therapeutic Strategy against Multidrug-Resistant Bacterial Infections in a Post-COVID-19 Era. *Life (Basel, Switzerland)*, *14*(2), 246.

Fekete, E. E., Figeys, D., & Zhang, X. (2023). Microbiota-directed biotherapeutics: considerations for quality and functional assessment. *Gut microbes*, *15*(1), 2186671.

Greber, K. E., & Dawgul, M. (2017). Antimicrobial peptides under clinical trials. *Current Topics in Medicinal Chemistry*, 17(5), 620–628.

Imai, Y., Meyer, K. J., Iinishi, A., Favre-Godal, Q., Green, R., Manuse, S., Caboni, M., Mori, M., Niles, S., Ghiglieri, M., Honrao, C., Ma, X., Guo, J. J., Makriyannis, A., Linares-Otoya, L., Böhringer, N., Wuisan, Z. G., Kaur, H., Wu, R., ... Lewis, K. (2019). A new antibiotic selectively kills Gram-negative pathogens. *Nature*, 576(7787), 459–464.

Kim, S. H., Min, Y. H., & Park, M. C. (2025). Antimicrobial Peptides: Current Status, Mechanisms of Action, and Strategies to Overcome Therapeutic Limitations. *Microorganisms*, *13*(11), 2574.

Lei, J., Sun, L., Huang, S., Zhu, C., Li, P., He, J., Mackey, V., Coy, D. H., & He, Q. (2019). The antimicrobial peptides and their potential clinical applications. *American journal of translational research*, *11*(7), 3919–3931.

Ling, L. L., Schneider, T., Peoples, A. J., Spoering, A. L., Engels, I., Conlon, B. P., Mueller, A., Schäberle, T. F., Hughes, D. E., Epstein, S., Jones, M., Lazarides, L., Steadman, V. A., Cohen, D. R., Felix, C. R., Fetterman, K. A., Millett, W. P., Nitti, A. G., Zullo, A.

M., ... Lewis, K. (2015). A new antibiotic kills pathogens without detectable resistance. *Nature*, 517(7535), 455–459.

Łobocka, M., Dąbrowska, K., & Górski, A. (2021). Engineered Bacteriophage Therapeutics: Rationale, Challenges and Future. *BioDrugs : clinical immunotherapeutics, biopharmaceuticals and gene therapy*, *35*(3), 255–280.

Majewski, P., Brown, A. C., Schneiders, T., & Osei Sekyere, J. (2025). Editorial: Emerging antimicrobials: sources, mechanisms of action, spectrum of activity, combination antimicrobial therapy, and resistance mechanisms. *Frontiers in microbiology*, *16*, 1754398.

Mayorga-Ramos, A., Zúñiga-Miranda, J., Carrera-Pacheco, S. E., Barba-Ostria, C., & Guamán, L. P. (2023). CRISPR-Cas-Based Antimicrobials: Design, Challenges, and Bacterial Mechanisms of Resistance. *ACS infectious diseases*, *9*(7), 1283–1302.

Murray, C. J. L., Ikuta, K. S., Sharara, F., Swetschinski, L., Aguilar, G. R., Gray, A., Han, C., Bisignano, C., Rao, P., Wool, E., Johnson, S. C., Browne, A. J., Chipeta, M. G., Fell, F., Hackett, S., Haines-Woodhouse, G., Hamadani, B. H. K., Kumaran, E. A. P., McManigal, B., ... Naghavi, M. (2022). Global burden of bacterial antimicrobial resistance in 2019: A systematic analysis. *The Lancet*, 399(10325), 629–655.

Palacios Araya, D., Palmer, K. L., & Duerkop, B. A. (2021). CRISPR-based antimicrobials to obstruct antibiotic-resistant and pathogenic bacteria. *PLoS pathogens*, *17*(7), e1009672.

Quiroga-Centeno, A. C., Atanasova, K., Ebert, M. P., Thomann, A. K., & Reindl, W. (2025). Emerging microbiome-directed therapies in inflammatory bowel disease: beyond diet modification and FMT. *Seminars in immunopathology*, *47*(1), 42.

Seixas, A. M. M., Sousa, S. A., & Leitão, J. H. (2022). Antibody-Based Immunotherapies as a Tool for Tackling Multidrug-Resistant Bacterial Infections. *Vaccines*, *10*(11), 1789.

Sharma, S., Chauhan, A., Ranjan, A., Mathkor, D. M., Haque, S., Ramniwas, S., Tuli, H. S., Jindal, T., & Yadav, V. (2024). Emerging challenges in antimicrobial resistance: implications for pathogenic microorganisms, novel antibiotics, and their impact on sustainability. *Frontiers in microbiology*, *15*, 1403168.

Tacconelli, E., Carrara, E., Savoldi, A., Harbarth, S., Mendelson, M., Monnet, D. L., Pulcini, C., Kahlmeter, G., Kluytmans, J., Carmeli, Y., Ouellette, M., Outterson, K., Patel, J., Cavaleri, M., Cox, E. M., Houchens, C. R., Grayson, M. L., Hansen, P., Singh, N., ... WHO Pathogens Priority List Working Group. (2018). Discovery, research, and development of new antibiotics: The WHO priority list of antibiotic-resistant bacteria and tuberculosis. *The Lancet Infectious Diseases*, 18(3), 318–327.

Traore, K., Seyer, D., Mihajlovski, A., & Sagona, A. P. (2025). Engineered bacteriophages for therapeutic and diagnostic applications. *Disease models & mechanisms*, *18*(9), dmm052393.

Ventola, C. L. (2015). The antibiotic resistance crisis: Part 1: Causes and threats. *Pharmacy and Therapeutics*, 40(4), 277–283.

Wang, L., Hu, C., & Shao, L. (2017). The antimicrobial activity of nanoparticles. *International Journal of Nanomedicine*, 12, 1227–1249.

Zurawski, D. V., & McLendon, M. K. (2020). Monoclonal antibodies as an antibacterial approach. *Antibiotics*, 9(4), 155.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Chapter 11

Pathophysiology of the Dengue Virus and Host Responses

Mushkan, Rupesh Dutta Banik

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata- 700121

**Corresponding Author's Email ID: rupeshduttabanik99@gmail.com*

ABSTRACT

One of the biggest global public health issues is dengue virus (DENV) infection, particularly in tropical areas where 75% of dengue infections occur. The family Flaviviridae includes the positive-stranded RNA viruses known as dengue viruses (DENV). Although most DENV infections are moderate or asymptomatic, 5% of cases progress to a severe form of the illness, which is primarily caused by repeated infections with distinct DENV serotypes. The intricate interactions between the virus, host genes, and host immune response are considered to be responsible for the pathogenesis of dengue virus infection. Major determinants of disease vulnerability include host factors such as memory cross-reactive T cells, anti-DENV NS1 antibodies, autoimmunity, antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE), and genetic variables. The pathophysiology of severe dengue was thought to be caused by the NS1 protein and anti-DENV NS1 antibodies. According to new research, a compromised immune response can limit viral clearance and cause severe inflammation, which can result in dengue hemorrhagic fever and dengue shock syndrome. Numerous additional significant aspects of DENV, such as pathogenesis, molecular biology, and control methods, have also been considered.

Keywords: DENV, T cells, dengue hemorrhagic fever, NS1 protein, host immune response

1. INTRODUCTION:

Dengue, a Flavivirus infection spread by mosquitoes, is mostly spread by Aedes aegypti, Aedes albopictus, and other Aedes species. There are four antigenically distinct dengue virus serotypes: DENV-1, DENV-2, DENV-3, and DENV-4 (Seema & Jain, 2005; Bhatt et al., 2021; Martina et al., 2009; Hershan, 2023). The Malaysian state of Sarawak has identified a fifth serotype (DENV-5) through isolation and genetic sequence analysis (Bhatt et al., 2021; Roy & Bhattacharjee, 2021).

The spherical envelope virion particles of the dengue virus (DENV), a positive-sense (+) single-stranded RNA virus, have icosahedral symmetry in their surface protein arrangement (Sinha et al., 2024; Malik et al., 2023; Nanaware et al., 2021). The dengue virus takes four to seven days to incubate. The disease spectrum includes more severe symptoms as well as mil milder febrile illnesses like dengue fever and silent infections (Bhatt et al., 2021).

An initial infection with one serotype leads to short-term immunity against the other three serotypes, which lasts for roughly six months, and long-term protection against that specific serotype. However, because of antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE) or original antigenic sin, secondary infection with a different DENV serotype may result in severe illness with consequences that lead to dengue shock syndrome (DSS) and dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF) (Seema & Jain, 2005; Lee et al., 2023).

A complicated interaction between the virus, host genes, and host immune response is thought to be responsible for the pathogenesis of DENV infection; the host immune response plays a crucial role in this progression. When the host immune system is clearing the virus, DENV infection actually shows up as the severe form of the illness, which is not correlated with the peak viral load. Additionally, pathophysiology and pathogenicity of the disease are influenced by antibody-dependent enhancement (ADE) during infection. The development of ADE occurs when antibodies from a prior heterotypic infection attach to the viral proteins but are unable to neutralize a subsequent infection with a different subtype. Following phagocytosis of the virus–antibody combination by the cells through crystallizable fragment-(Fc) receptors, the disease increases (Khanam et al., 2022). Given that the pathophysiology of DENV infection is so complicated, additional investigation is warranted.

2. DENV GENOME ORGANIZATION AND STRUCTURE:

The dengue virus has an icosahedral nucleocapsid that is 500 Å in diameter and is an enveloped single-stranded positive-sense RNA virus with a roughly spherical shape (Lee et al., 2023; Hidari & Suzuki, 2011; Nanaware et al., 2021). Three unique structural proteins-the capsid (C), membrane (M), and envelope (E)-as well as seven non-structural proteins-designated as NS1, NS2A, NS2B, NS3, NS4A, NS4B, and NS5-make up the viral composition (Guabiraba & Ryffel, 2014; Jayachandran et al., 2021; Hershan, 2023; Roy & Bhattacharjee, 2021; Krishna et al., 2024).

Like in eukaryotes, the 11 kb length DENV genome may serve as mRNA and has untranslated regions (UTRs) at both the 5′ and 3′ ends that border the open reading frame (ORF) (Lee et al., 2023; Hershan, 2023; Nanaware et al., 2021). While the 3′-UTR has 114-650

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

nucleotides and no poly(A) tail, terminating in a conserved stem-loop secondary structure, the 5′-UTR has 95–135 nucleotides and a type I cap-like mRNA. The primary role of the 5′-UTR is to regulate translational efficiency, which in turn controls gene expression. While the 3′-UTR is composed of the conserved RNA structure essential for viral replication, it has an impact on the stability and localization of the mRNA (Lee et al., 2023).

C-coding hairpin (cHP), five cyclization sequences (5CS), upstream and downstream sections pertaining to AUG are designated as the 5′UAR (upstream AUG region) and 5′DAR (downstream AUG region), and stem-loop (SL) structures SLA and SLB are all present in the 5′UTR. Within the C protein encoding area are the DAR, cHP, and 5CS (Nanaware et al., 2021). While non-structural proteins are crucial for viral replication, assembly, maturation, and polyprotein cleavage, structural proteins make up the DENV viral particles (Lee et al., 2023).

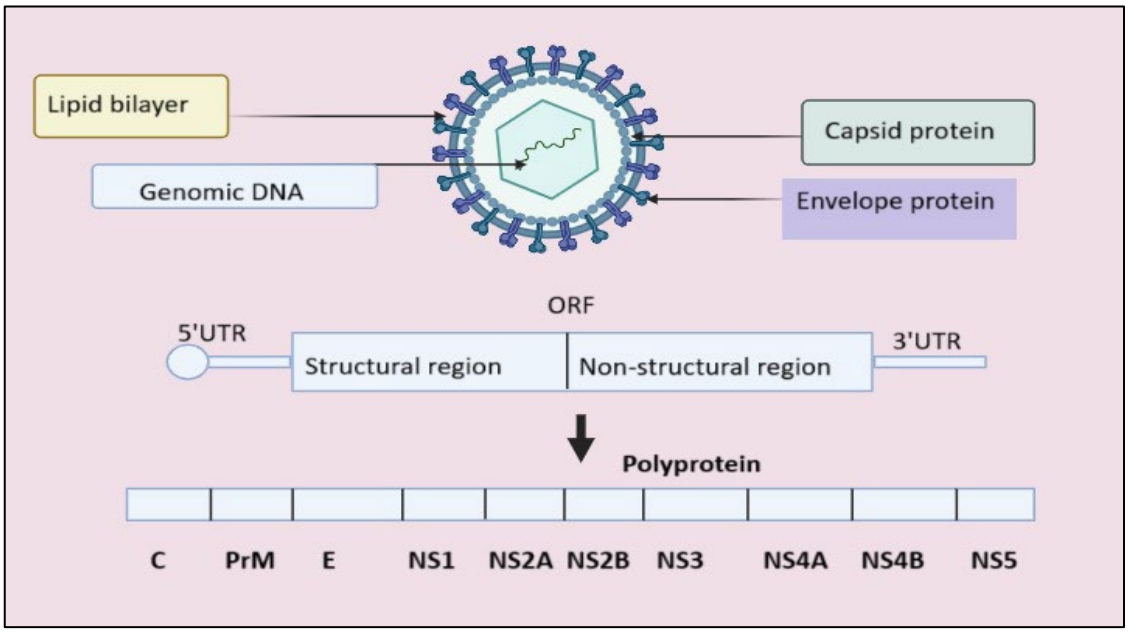


Figure 1: Dengue virus structure and RNA genome organization.

3. DENGUE VIRUS TRANSMISSION AND REPLICATION CYCLE:

The dengue virus is spread by female mosquitoes, primarily those of the *Aedes aegypti* species, while certain other species, including *Aedes albopictus*, *Aedes polynesianis*, *Aedes scutellaris*, and others, also play a role. Through blood consumption, an infected mosquito can spread the virus to people (Seema & Jain, 2005; Roy & Bhattacharjee, 2021; Nanaware et al., 2021). An RNA virus like DENV must make contact, attach to, and enter the vulnerable host in order to access the host's cellular machinery and begin multiplying. Saliva from the pathogenic female Aedes aegypti mosquito's salivary gland spreads the dengue virus to the mammalian host's skin. The salivary glands or other secondary tissue of the vector are where viral replication begins.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Virion release occurs in the saliva as a result of this replication before the virus infects the human host (Nanaware et al., 2021).

Because DENV binds to a wide range of molecules, it can infect a variety of cell groups, including but not limited to fibroblasts, monocytes, macrophages, dendritic cells, B cells, T cells, endothelial cells, hepatocytes, and epithelial cells (Lee et al., 2023; Nanaware et al., 2021).

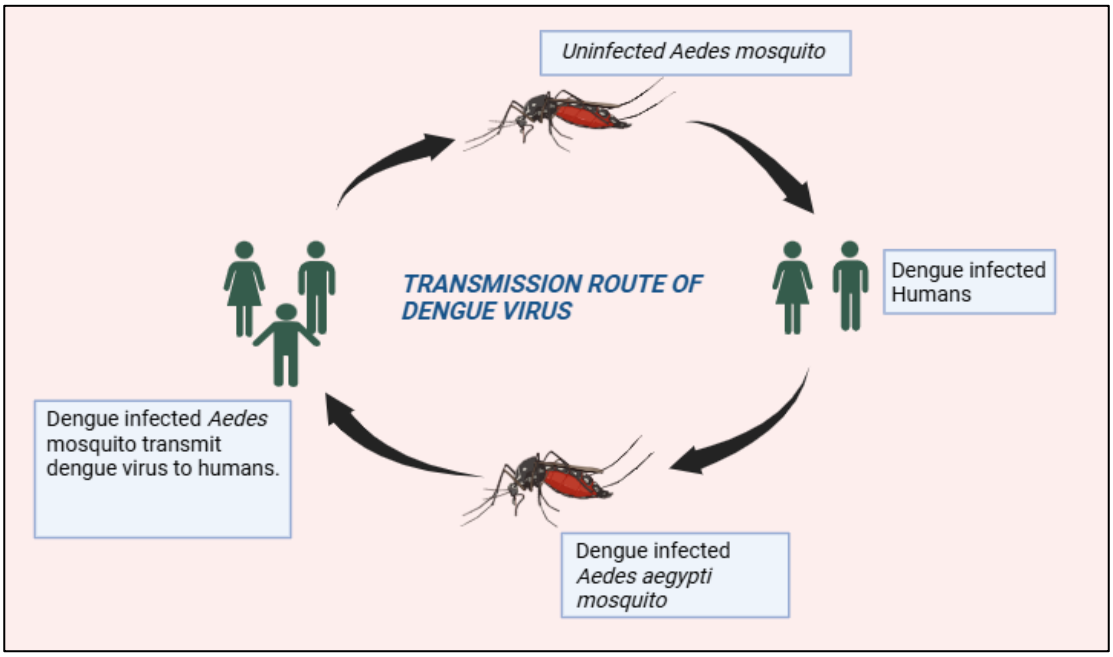


Figure 2: The pathogen's mode of transmission.

There are various phases in the life cycle of DENV, including viral entrance, replication, assembly, and release (Lee et al., 2023). One of the several stages in the flavivirus life cycle is as follows: (a) virions adhere to receptors and cell-surface attachment molecules before being absorbed by endocytosis; (b) viral glycoproteins facilitate the union of viral and cellular membranes, enabling virion disintegration and vRNA release into the cytoplasm because of the endosome's low pH; (c) viral and cellular proteases convert vRNA into a polyprotein; (d) the viral NS proteins duplicate the genome RNA; (e) at the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) membrane, C protein and vRNA develop to create immature virus particles; (f) the trans-Golgi network (TGN) transports immature viral particles, and the maturation of the virus is driven by furin-mediated cleavage of prM in the acidic environment of the TGN; and (g) the virus matures and leaves the cell (Nanaware et al., 2021).

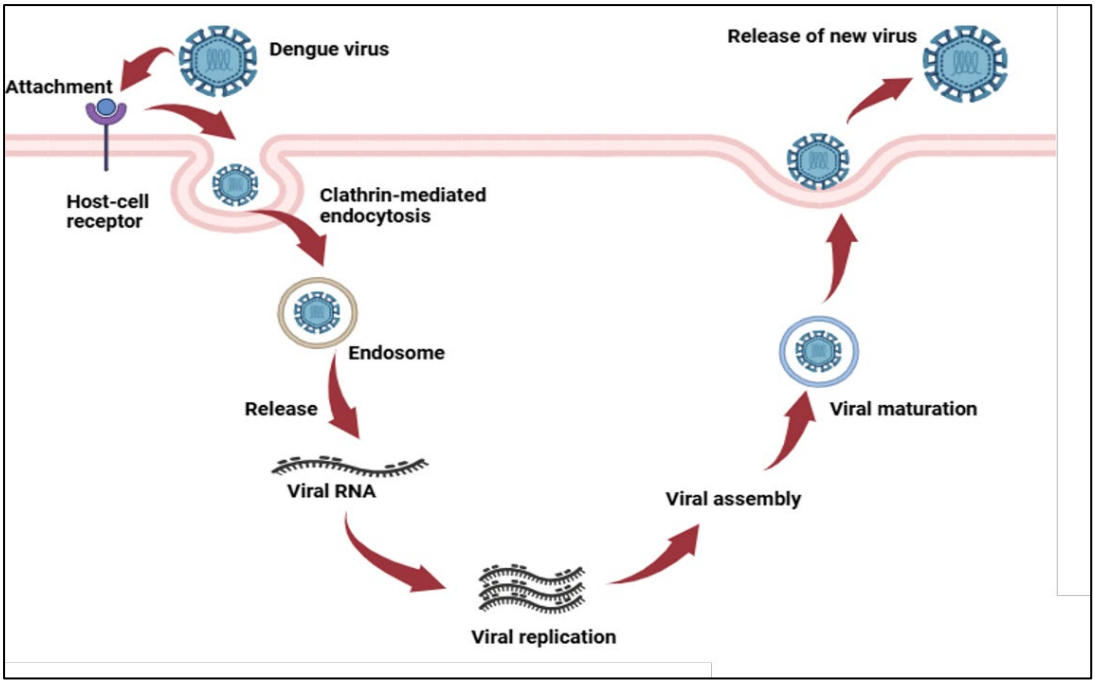


Figure 3: Dengue virus replication cycle.

4. PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF DENGUE:

Different clinical signs of dengue infection range from a moderate, manageable fever to serious physiological problems. Dengue fever (DF) is the term for the initial infection with a certain serotype of dengue, which is typically asymptomatic or has minor clinical symptoms (Malik et al., 2023; Roy & Bhattacharjee, 2021).

4.1 Dengue fever (DF):

Either primary or secondary infections may precede the onset of dengue fever (DF). Symptoms usually start as a high-grade, biphasic fever that lasts three to seven days (Roy & Bhattacharjee, 2021; Nanaware et al., 2021). Other symptoms that have been noted include a severe headache, usually in the retrobulbar area, exhaustion, aching muscles and joints, a metallic aftertaste, lack of appetite, nausea, and gastrointestinal trouble. Because of myalgia and joint pain, dengue fever is frequently referred to as "breakbone fever" (Malavige & Ogg, 2024; Malik et al., 2023; Roy & Bhattacharjee, 2021; Nanaware et al., 2021).

4.2 Dengue hemorrhagic fever (DHF):

DHF is often the consequence of a subsequent dengue infection. In neonates, it may also occur during the initial infection due to dengue antibodies obtained from the mother (Krishna et al., 2024). Increased vascular permeability, hemostasis failure, and significant increased vascular leakage are the hallmarks of DHF, a severe febrile illness that can lead to DSS with shock

(Malik et al., 2023; Roy & Bhattacharjee, 2021; Leong et al., 2007). A severe fever lasting two days to a week is known as the acute febrile phase. Hemorrhagic episodes may include bleeding hemorrhage at the injection site, gingival bleeding, purpura, petechiae or melena, ecchymosis, or gastrointestinal involvement (Malavige & Ogg, 2024; Krishna et al., 2024).

4.3 Dengue shock syndrome (DSS):

A type of hypovolemic shock known as DSS results in decreased peripheral perfusion, which raises the risk of tissue damage and multiple organ failure (Malik et al., 2023; Roy & Bhattacharjee, 2021). DHF and symptoms including restlessness, chilly, clammy skin, circumoral cyanosis, narrow pulse pressure (≤20 mmHg), and an irregular pulse are what define dengue shock syndrome (Tuiskunen Bäck & Lundkvist, 2013; Krishna et al., 2024). The progressive worsening of shock, the loss of several organs, and the development of disseminated intravascular coagulation are the causes of the high death rate associated with DSS. Following the administration of suitable supportive measures to the patient, the duration of the transitory shock decreases (Krishna et al., 2024).

5. DENV AND HOST RESPONSES:

DENV depends on host cellular functions for both translation and replication. After infection, DENV engages in complex interactions with the host's immune system, setting off a series of cellular and molecular reactions meant to combat the invasive pathogen (Sinha et al., 2024). Throughout its life cycle, the dengue virus (DENV) faces several challenges, from its first entry into the host cell to the eventual discharge of fully developed virions. Direct and indirect immune surveillance evasion has been identified for DENV. Moreover, it has been shown to selectively target immunological mediators in order to block intracellular antiviral signal transduction (Malik et al., 2023; Krishna et al., 2024).

The host network's innate and adaptive immune systems work together to thwart the DENV attack. The initial DENV encounters occur in the dermal cells, dendritic cells (DCs), and Langerhans cells (LCs) at the mosquito bite site. DCs are dispersed throughout the tissue so they never miss an opportunity to come into contact with the virus. Through signals from the chemoattractants, they are drawn to the DENV entrance site along with the macrophages. Both inflammation and the host's adaptive responses are independently influenced by the migration of antigen-presenting cells. DC signals like TNF-α attract NK cells, which are essential for limiting DENV pathogenesis and replication in the early phases of infection via producing IFN (Nanaware et al., 2021).

Natural killer cells, dendritic cells, and macrophages are among the immune cells that include the Toll-like receptors (TLRs) family of pattern recognition receptors. By identifying and reacting to pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs) found on the surface of invasive microbes, these receptors play a critical part in innate immunity. A number of TLRs have been linked to the innate immune response to the dengue virus in cases of infection. The identification of viral RNA, a crucial part of the dengue virus, is known to be facilitated by TLR3, TLR7, and TLR8 (Malik et al., 2023; Krishna et al., 2024). Even though the immune system as a whole fights DENV with remarkable strength, some of these reactions might harm the host by causing what is known as a "cytokine storm" (Nanaware et al., 2021). Gaining insight into how TLRs contribute to innate immunity against dengue could open the door to the creation of innovative treatment strategies for this virus (Malik et al., 2023).

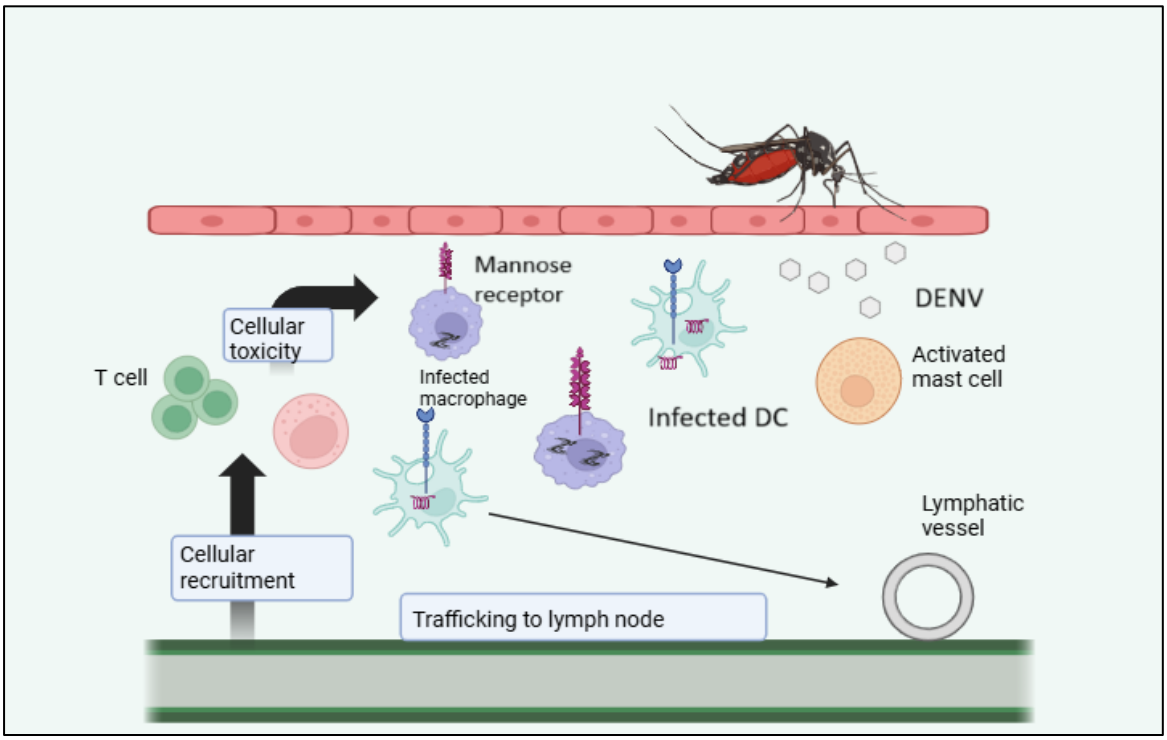


Figure 4: Demonstration of host responses to the dengue virus.

6. THERAPEUTIC STRATEGIES:

Current research has investigated a number of methods to fight the infection, even though no particular antiviral treatment has been approved to treat dengue. These approaches include looking into substances that might prevent the spread of viruses, immune modulators that aim to strengthen the host's defenses, and monoclonal antibodies that mimic the body's natural defenses (Sinha et al., 2024; Jayachandran et al., 2021). The only strategy for preventing disease at the moment is vector control, which is seen to be both costly and ineffectual.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Since there are currently no vaccinations or antiviral medications to prevent DENV infection, supportive care for dengue patients mostly consists of bed rest, antipyretics, and analgesics. Ringer's lactate has been demonstrated to be useful in moderately severe dengue, whereas starch or dextran have been recommended for more severe cases. In DSS patients, immediate resuscitation with intravenous fluids to replenish lost intravascular volume is a must. Because of plasma leakage, aspirin and other salicylates should be avoided (Tuiskunen Bäck & Lundkvist, 2013).

The sole purpose of the offered treatments is to alleviate the infection's symptoms. However, there are a number of clinical trial candidates for vaccines (Sinha et al., 2024; Jayachandran et al., 2021). The many phases of the viral replication cycle have been the main focus of the development of innovative treatment strategies for dengue sickness (Sinha et al., 2024; Tuiskunen Bäck & Lundkvist, 2013).

There has been a lot of interest in the E protein's structural changes and interactions with prM or M. Making peptides that resemble the M protein's pr peptide has been another strategy to stop the structural alterations of the E-prM protein interactions. This stops membrane fusion and the release of freshly created virions. Numerous alternatives are provided by nucleic acid-based therapeutics. The use of antisense DNA or RNA decoys, such as phosphorodiamidate morpholino oligomers (PMOs), is another nucleic acid-based antiviral strategy. The primary issue with the majority of treatment strategies, meanwhile, is that their ability to block all four DENV serotypes has not been confirmed (Tuiskunen Bäck & Lundkvist, 2013). Additionally, clinical trials are essential for assessing the efficacy and safety of these antiviral treatments, and their accomplishments could lead to an advancement in the range of dengue patient treatment alternatives (Sinha et al., 2024).

7. CONCLUSION:

A major public health concern has always been the presence of DENV. Since there is now no very effective vaccine to control the severity of dengue by all serotypes, dengue has become a significant and potentially fatal burden on humans, and its occurrence has been rising daily. The best way to protect a person from the dengue virus is up for debate. Both viral and host factors play a part in the complex and multifaceted pathophysiology of DHF and DSS.

Since most of the nations where dengue virus outbreaks occur are economically disadvantaged, vaccines to prevent dengue virus infection should be affordable. While some live attenuated tetravalent vaccines are licensed for dengue and some are in the experimental stage, the primary obstacles to the development of an effective dengue vaccine are the distinct

complexity of DENV pathogenesis and its connection to immunological strengthening. Predicting the epidemiology requires gathering information on the circulating DENV serotypes or genetic sequences that are infected and investigating the relationship between moderate to severe illness and primary or secondary infection with the serotype in epidemic areas.

8. FUTURE PROSPECTS:

The pandemic era over the last three years has caused the scientific community to become more concerned about infectious illnesses. This explains why there is so much study being done on viral infections. To provide novel ways to vaccine and medicine development, it is necessary to investigate contemporary therapeutic approaches, such as those based on nanotechnology. According to substantial data, dengue will become more common worldwide in the future. Prevention, treatment, and vector control are the main strategies for handling dengue. Presently, there is a poorly developed curative technique. Clinical trials for vaccines are now underway, and there are currently no approved antiviral drugs. Therefore, preventative and vector control initiatives must be given top priority.

Due to the lack of appropriate animal models that can faithfully reproduce the entire spectrum of immunopathogenic symptoms seen in humans, a thorough knowledge of the DENV immunopathogenesis mechanism is still elusive. Though there is still a lot of work to be done, dengue research has made impressive strides in recent decades. Future success in managing the escalating threat to global public health will depend on having a thorough understanding of the problem, carefully developing hypotheses, and applying research methodologies with diligence.

AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS

Mushkan contributed to conceptualization, data collection, and manuscript drafting. Rupesh Dutta Banik contributed to supervision, manuscript review, and editing. All authors have read and approved the final version of this manuscript.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Deepest appreciation is expressed to the higher authorities of Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, for providing the essential permission and institutional backing to carry out this study.

REFERENCES:

Bhatt, P., Sabeena, S. P., Varma, M., & Arunkumar, G. (2021). Current understanding of the pathogenesis of dengue virus infection. Current Microbiology, 78(1), 17–32. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00284-020-02284-w

Guabiraba, R., & Ryffel, B. (2014). Dengue virus infection: Current concepts in immune mechanisms and lessons from murine models. Immunology, 141(2), 143–156. https://doi.org/10.1111/imm.12188

Hershan, A. A. (2023). Dengue virus: Molecular biology and recent developments in control strategies, prevention, management, and therapeutics. Journal of Pharmacology and Pharmacotherapeutics, 14(2), 89–102. https://doi.org/10.1177/0976500X231204401

Hidari, K. I., & Suzuki, T. (2011). Dengue virus receptor. Tropical Medicine and Health, 39(4Supplement), 37–43. https://doi.org/10.2149/tmh.2011-S03

Jayachandran, B., Chanda, K., & Balamurali, M. M. (2021). Overview of pathogenesis, diagnostics, and therapeutics of infectious diseases: Dengue and zika. ACS Omega, 6(35), 22487–22496. https://doi.org/10.1021/acsomega.1c03536

Khanam, A., Gutiérrez-Barbosa, H., Lyke, K. E., & Chua, J. V. (2022). Immune-mediated pathogenesis in dengue virus infection. Viruses, 14(11), Article 2575. https://doi.org/10.3390/v14112575

Krishna, G., Sreedevi, S., & Thrimothi, D. (2024). Dengue virus infection: Etiology, epidemiology, pathogenesis, diagnosis, and prevention. In Viral Infectious Diseases Annual Volume 2024. IntechOpen. https://doi.org/10.5772/intechopen.114323

Lee, M. F., Wu, Y. S., & Poh, C. L. (2023). Molecular mechanisms of antiviral agents against dengue virus. Viruses, 15(3), Article 705. https://doi.org/10.3390/v15030705

Leong, A. S. Y., Wong, K. T., Leong, T. Y. M., Tan, P. H., & Wannakrairot, P. (2007). The pathology of dengue hemorrhagic fever. Seminars in Diagnostic Pathology, 24(4), 227–236. https://doi.org/10.1053/j.semdp.2007.07.002

Malavige, G. N., & Ogg, G. S. (2024). Molecular mechanisms in the pathogenesis of dengue infections. Trends in Molecular Medicine, 30(5), 401–415. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.molmed.2024.03.006

Malik, S., Ahsan, O., Mumtaz, H., Tahir Khan, M., Sah, R., & Waheed, Y. (2023). Tracing down the updates on dengue virus—molecular biology, antivirals, and vaccine strategies. Vaccines, 11(8), Article 1328. https://doi.org/10.3390/vaccines11081328

Martina, B. E., Koraka, P., & Osterhaus, A. D. (2009). Dengue virus pathogenesis: An integrated view. Clinical Microbiology Reviews, 22(4), 564–581. https://doi.org/10.1128/cmr.00035-09

Nanaware, N., Banerjee, A., Mullick Bagchi, S., Bagchi, P., & Mukherjee, A. (2021). Dengue virus infection: A tale of viral exploitations and host responses. Viruses, 13(10), Article 1967. https://doi.org/10.3390/v13101967

Roy, S. K., & Bhattacharjee, S. (2021). Dengue virus: Epidemiology, biology, and disease aetiology. Canadian Journal of Microbiology, 67(10), 687–702. https://doi.org/10.1139/cjm-2020-0572

Seema, & Jain, S. K. (2005). Molecular mechanism of pathogenesis of dengue virus: Entry and fusion with target cell. Indian Journal of Clinical Biochemistry, 20(2), 150–161. https://doi.org/10.1007/BF02867407

Sinha, S., Singh, K., Ravi Kumar, Y. S., Roy, R., Phadnis, S., Meena, V., & Verma, B. (2024). Dengue virus pathogenesis and host molecular machineries. Journal of Biomedical Science, 31(1), Article 43. https://doi.org/10.1186/s12929-024-01030-9

Tuiskunen Bäck, A., & Lundkvist, Å. (2013). Dengue viruses–an overview. Infection Ecology & Epidemiology, 3(1), Article 19839. https://doi.org/10.3402/iee.v3i0.19839

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Chapter 12

Cancer Stem Cell-Mediated Exhaustion of CD8+ T Cells in Breast Cancer: Mechanisms and Therapeutic Strategies to Overcome Immune Suppression

Aishwarya Guha

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata- 700121

**Corresponding Author's Email ID: aishbrabourne@gmail.com*

ABSTRACT

Breast cancer remains one of the most prevalent malignancies worldwide, with immune evasion constituting a central barrier to durable therapeutic responses. Cancer stem cells (CSCs) a small, self-renewing subpopulation within the tumor have emerged as potent orchestrators of immune suppression, particularly through the induction of CD8+ cytotoxic T lymphocyte (CTL) exhaustion. Exhausted CD8+ T cells progressively lose effector functions, upregulate inhibitory receptors (PD-1, TIM-3, LAG-3, TIGIT) and adopt a transcriptionally fixed, dysfunctional state that undermines anti-tumor immunity. This review comprehensively examines the molecular mechanisms by which breast cancer stem cells (BCSCs) drive CTL exhaustion, encompassing direct ligand-receptor interactions, paracrine cytokine signalling, metabolic reprogramming, extracellular vesicle-mediated communication and epigenetic remodelling of T cell chromatin. Further, the study discusses tumor microenvironmental niche that BCSCs engineer to sustain immune privilege and survey emerging strategies to restore CD8+ T cell functionality including immune checkpoint blockade, CSC-targeted therapies, metabolic and epigenetic interventions, adoptive cell therapies and combinatorial approaches.

Keywords: Cancer stem cells (CSCs); CD8+ T cell exhaustion; Breast cancer; Tumor microenvironment; Immune checkpoint; Immunotherapy; CAR-T cells; Epigenetic reprogramming

1. INTRODUCTION:

Breast cancer is the most frequently diagnosed cancer in women globally and the second leading cause of cancer-related mortality. Despite remarkable advances in surgery, radiotherapy and systemic therapies, metastatic breast cancer remains largely incurable. Over the past decade, immunotherapy particularly immune checkpoint inhibitors (ICIs) has transformed oncology; however, responses in breast cancer have been modest compared to melanoma or non-small cell lung cancer (Bruni et al., 2020). Understanding the mechanisms underlying breast cancer's relative immunoresistance is therefore imperative.

Tumor-infiltrating lymphocytes (TILs), especially CD8+ cytotoxic T lymphocytes, are the principal effectors of anti-tumor immunity. High TIL density is associated with improved outcomes in triple-negative breast cancer (TNBC) and HER2-positive subtypes. Paradoxically, many breast tumors harbor CD8+ T cells that are phenotypically and functionally exhausted and are unable to execute cytolytic programs. This state of exhaustion is not mere anergy but a distinct differentiation trajectory driven by chronic antigen exposure and a suppressive tumor microenvironment (TME) (Schietinger et al., 2016; Sade-Feldman et al., 2018).

Cancer stem cells (CSCs), also designated as tumor-initiating cells or breast cancer stem cells (BCSCs), are operationally defined by their capacity for self-renewal, multi-lineage differentiation, tumor initiation at limiting dilutions and resistance to conventional therapies. In breast cancer, BCSCs are enriched within CD44hi/CD24lo, ALDH1high, or EpCAMhi populations (Al-Hajj et al., 2003) and are disproportionately responsible for metastasis, therapy resistance, and tumor relapse. Emerging evidence implicates BCSCs as architects of the immunosuppressive TME and their capacity to subvert CD8+ T cell immunity driving exhaustion through multiple, overlapping mechanisms positions them at the nexus of immune evasion and disease recurrence (Dongre et al., 2017).

This review provides a comprehensive account of (i) the biology of CD8+ T cell exhaustion, (ii) the mechanisms by which BCSCs induce and sustain CTL exhaustion (iii) the broader immunosuppressive ecosystem engineered by BCSCs and (iv) therapeutic strategies aimed at dismantling this immunosuppressive circuitry.

2. CD8+ T CELL EXHAUSTION: BIOLOGY AND SIGNIFICANCE:

2.1 Defining T Cell Exhaustion:

T cell exhaustion was first described in a chronic viral infection model (LCMV clone 13) and has since been recognized as a hallmark of cancer immunity. Unlike effector or memory T cells, exhausted T cells (Tex) are characterized by hierarchical loss of cytokine production (IL-2 first,

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

followed by TNF-α and IFN-γ), impaired cytolytic capacity and sustained co-expression of multiple inhibitory receptors (Wherry & Kurachi, 2015). Crucially, exhaustion is not a reversible state of fatigue but a stable epigenetic program that progressively limits T cell plasticity and responsiveness (Pauken & Wherry, 2015).

Tex cells are heterogeneous, comprising progenitor exhausted (Tpex: TCF1+, PD-1int, Ly108+), terminally exhausted (Tte: TOX+, PD-1hi, TIM-3+, CD39+), and effector-like transitional subsets. Tpex cells retain proliferative capacity and are the principal responders to PD-1 blockade, whereas terminally exhausted cells are largely unresponsive to current checkpoint therapies (Miller et al., 2019; Kallies et al., 2020). The balance between these subsets has profound implications for immunotherapy efficacy.

2.2 Transcriptional and Epigenetic Hallmarks:

The exhaustion program is governed by a distinct transcriptional network. TOX, a member of the HMG-box family, is the master regulator of exhaustion, induced by sustained high TCR signaling via NFAT. TOX drives expression of inhibitory receptors and suppresses effector gene programs (Khan et al., 2019). Other key transcription factors include NR4A1, EOMES (high in Tex), and reduced levels of T-bet. The transcription factor TCF1 (encoded by Tcf7) marks the Tpex subset and is required for sustained responses to checkpoint immunotherapy (Miller et al., 2019).

Epigenetically, exhaustion is distinguished by accessible chromatin at inhibitory loci (PDCD1, Havcr2, Lag3, Tigit) and compacted chromatin at effector gene loci (Ifng, Gzmb, Il2). These changes are mediated by DNA methylation at key effector loci and are partially refractory to checkpoint blockade (Khan et al., 2019; Peng et al., 2015). The DNMT3A methyltransferase and polycomb repressive complexes play central roles in cementing this epigenetic state, motivating the development of epigenetic-immunotherapy combinations.

2.3 Inhibitory Receptor Landscape:

Exhausted CD8+ T cells in breast cancer co-express multiple co-inhibitory receptors whose sustained engagement drives progressive dysfunction. PD-1 (CD279), the canonical exhaustion marker, signals through SHP-1/2 phosphatases to blunt TCR signaling. TIM-3 (HAVCR2) engages ligands including Galectin-9, HMGB1, CEACAM-1 and phosphatidylserine, potentiating terminal exhaustion. LAG-3 binds MHC-II and fibrinogen-like protein 1 (FGL1) to suppress T cell activation. TIGIT competes with CD226 for PVR/CD155 binding, tipping the balance toward tolerance. CD39/CD73 ectonucleotidase activity on Tex cells generates

immunosuppressive adenosine from ATP **(Morad et al., 2021)**. The simultaneous co-expression of these receptors correlates with the most severe functional impairment and the poorest clinical outcomes in breast cancer **(Bruni et al., 2020)**.

3. CANCER STEM CELLS IN BREAST CANCER: IDENTITY AND IMMUNE INTERFACE:

3.1 Characterization of Breast Cancer Stem Cells:

BCSCs were originally identified by Al-Hajj et al. (2003) as a CD44+CD24-/low Lin- population capable of generating tumors in NOD/SCID mice at low cell numbers. Subsequently, ALDH1 activity (measured by the ALDEFLUOR assay) was identified as an additional enrichment strategy that captures a partly overlapping, partly distinct BCSC population. EpCAM hi/CD49f+ markers define luminal progenitor-like BCSCs, whereas the CD44hi/CD24lo population is mesenchymal/basal-like. These populations are not static. Rather, epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition (EMT) drives interconversion between non-stem and stem states and environmental stressors including chemotherapy, hypoxia and inflammatory cytokines can expand BCSC pools (Dongre et al., 2017; Batlle & Clevers, 2017).

BCSCs are disproportionately enriched in TNBC, the most aggressive and immunologically complex breast cancer subtype, but are present in all molecular subtypes. They localize to perivascular niches, hypoxic regions and the invasive tumor front. Their resistance to chemotherapy and radiotherapy is mediated by enhanced DNA repair, elevated ALDH1-mediated detoxification, quiescence, upregulated ABC transporters and high BCL-2 family expression (Batlle & Clevers, 2017).

3.2 BCSCs and the Immunosuppressive Niche:

BCSCs actively construct an immunosuppressive microenvironment that serves to protect them from immune-mediated elimination. This involves recruitment and polarization of immunosuppressive stromal cells, direct suppression of effector lymphocytes and remodeling of the physical and metabolic milieu (Spranger & Gajewski, 2018). The immunosuppressive niche is not merely a passive barrier but a dynamically maintained ecosystem that BCSCs continuously regulate through paracrine signaling, contact-dependent mechanisms and metabolic control. The downstream consequence T cell exhaustion represents one of the most consequential outputs of this ecosystem (Duan et al., 2020).

4. MECHANISMS BY WHICH BCSCS DRIVE CD8+ T CELL EXHAUSTION:

4.1 PD-L1/PD-1 Axis:

PD-L1 (CD274, B7-H1) is constitutively and highly expressed on BCSCs compared to non-stem breast cancer cells. This differential expression is regulated by multiple oncogenic pathways: PI3K/AKT/mTOR signaling phosphorylates and stabilizes PD-L1 protein by inhibiting its GSK-3β-mediated ubiquitination and proteasomal degradation. STAT3, downstream of IL-6 and JAK2, transcriptionally activates PD-L1 in BCSCs. Hypoxia-inducible factor-1α (HIF-1α), abundant in the hypoxic BCSC niche, directly binds the PD-L1 promoter and drives expression (Spranger & Gajewski, 2018). The EMT transcription factor ZEB1, highly expressed in BCSCs, also transactivates PD-L1 (Dongre et al., 2017).

BCSC-derived PD-L1 engages PD-1 on tumor-antigen-specific CD8+ T cells within the TME. This interaction activates SHP-2 phosphatase, dephosphorylating CD3ζ, ZAP-70 and downstream signaling intermediaries, thereby blunting TCR signaling and IL-2 production. Prolonged PD-1 signaling drives NFAT nuclear translocation without AP-1 co-activation-a condition that preferentially induces TOX expression, cementing the exhaustion program (Khan et al., 2019). Additionally, PD-L1 expressed on BCSC-derived exosomes can systemically suppress CD8+ T cells beyond the primary tumor, extending the immune suppression landscape (Chen et al., 2018).

4.2 Immunosuppressive Cytokine Secretion:

BCSCs secrete a distinctive cytokine profile that fundamentally shapes T cell differentiation and function. Transforming growth factor-beta (TGF-β) is among the most potent BCSC-derived immunosuppressors. TGF-β suppresses CD8+ T cell cytotoxicity by downregulating the expression of cytolytic molecules (perforin, granzyme B, FasL), inhibits T cell proliferation by blocking IL-2 signalling, and promotes FoxP3+ regulatory T cell (Treg) differentiation, which further suppresses CTLs (Bhatt et al., 2021). BCSCs express elevated levels of TGF-β receptors, making them relatively resistant to TGF-β's growth-suppressive effects-an elegant asymmetry that allows BCSCs to weaponize TGF-β against immune cells while remaining protected.

Interleukin-10 (IL-10), also abundantly produced by BCSCs and BCSC-educated macrophages, inhibits antigen presentation, reduces co-stimulatory molecule expression on dendritic cells, and directly suppresses CD8+ T cell activation. IL-6, a pleiotropic cytokine produced by BCSCs, promotes STAT3 signalling in both tumor cells and immune cells; in T

cells, STAT3 suppresses T-bet and promotes a dysfunctional, less effector-like phenotype. CXCL12 secreted by BCSCs recruits immunosuppressive plasmacytoid dendritic cells (pDCs) and myeloid-derived suppressor cells (MDSCs), indirectly fostering exhaustion (DeNardo & Ruffell, 2019). IL-35, produced by Tregs that BCSCs recruit, directly induces an exhaustion-like phenotype characterized by IL-10 production, further amplifying immunosuppression (Vitale et al., 2021).

4.3 Metabolic Reprogramming of the TME:

BCSCs impose metabolic conditions within the TME that selectively cripple CD8+ T cells while fueling their own survival. BCSCs exhibit high glycolytic flux (Warburg effect) even under aerobic conditions, consuming glucose and generating lactate at rates exceeding bulk tumor cells. Extracellular lactate acidifies the TME through monocarboxylate transporter (MCT)-mediated export, directly impairing CD8+ T cell glycolytic capacity, reducing IFN-γ secretion, and limiting TCR-proximal signalling (Chang et al., 2015). Lactate also stabilizes HIF-1α in immune cells, skewing macrophage polarization toward an immunosuppressive M2 phenotype.

BCSCs also express high levels of CD39 and CD73, ectonucleotidases that convert extracellular ATP to AMP and ultimately adenosine. Adenosine engages A2A receptors on CD8+ T cells, increasing intracellular cAMP, suppressing TCR signalling via PKA-mediated phosphorylation of Lck, and impairing cytokine production and cytotoxicity. Nutrient competition particularly for glutamine and arginine starves infiltrating T cells of metabolic substrates needed for effector functions (Reinfeld et al., 2021). IDO1 (indoleamine-2,3-dioxygenase), expressed by BCSCs and BCSC-induced tolerogenic dendritic cells, catabolizes tryptophan to kynurenines. Tryptophan depletion activates GCN2 kinase in T cells, suppressing mTORC1 activity; kynurenines directly induce T cell apoptosis and promote Treg differentiation via aryl hydrocarbon receptor (AhR) signalling (Morad et al., 2021).

4.4 Extracellular Vesicle-Mediated Immunosuppression:

BCSCs are prolific producers of extracellular vesicles (EVs), particularly exosomes (30–150 nm), which carry a cargo of proteins, lipids and nucleic acids that functionally reprogram recipient immune cells. BCSC-derived exosomes are enriched in membrane-bound PD-L1, which systemically suppresses CD8+ T cell activation even in lymph nodes draining the tumor (Chen et al., 2018). They carry TGF-β, which upon exosomal delivery induces Treg differentiation and suppresses CTL function. MicroRNAs (miR-21, miR-155, miR-222, miR-

146a) within BCSC exosomes target T cell activation pathways: miR-21 targets PTEN, promoting immunosuppressive PI3K signalling in recipient cells; miR-146a suppresses pro-inflammatory NF-κB signalling in dendritic cells, impairing their ability to prime CD8+ T cells (Vitale et al., 2021).

Exosomal Galectin-9 engages TIM-3 on CD8+ T cells, inducing apoptosis of Th1 cells and reinforcing exhaustion in persisting CTLs. Exosomal HSP70 paradoxically enhances MDSC suppressive function, further constricting the CD8+ T cell response. Collectively, BCSC-derived EVs extend the immunosuppressive reach of BCSCs across the TME and into systemic circulation, creating a fundamentally hostile environment for effective anti-tumor CD8+ T cell responses (DeNardo & Ruffell, 2019).

4.5 Epigenetic Remodeling of CD8+ T Cells:

BCSCs and the TME impose epigenetic alterations on CD8+ T cells that progressively restrict transcriptional flexibility and lock cells into exhaustion. Persistent TCR signalling drives NFAT-mediated TOX induction; TOX recruits NuRD complexes to effector gene loci, establishing repressive histone modifications (H3K27me3, H3K9me3) and DNA methylation (Khan et al., 2019). Simultaneously, DNMT3A is recruited to the IFNγ locus and other effector genes, methylating CpG sites and stably silencing IFN-γ production. These epigenetic changes are more refractory to reversal than transcriptional changes alone (Peng et al., 2015).

TGF-β signalling from BCSCs activates SMAD2/3, which recruits EZH2 (the PRC2 catalytic subunit) to T-bet and Eomes loci in CD8+ T cells, suppressing effector differentiation factors via H3K27 trimethylation. IL-10 from BCSCs signals through STAT3, promoting HDAC activity that deacetylates and silences effector gene promoters (Bhatt et al., 2021). These epigenetic alterations explain the incomplete responses observed with checkpoint blockade alone and motivate epigenetic combination strategies.

4.6 Antigen Presentation Defects:

Effective CD8+ T cell priming and maintenance require efficient antigen presentation via MHC class I molecules. BCSCs exhibit reduced or heterogeneous MHC-I expression, driven by downregulation of antigen processing machinery components including TAP1, TAP2, tapasin, and the immuno-proteasome subunits LMP2 and LMP7. This is orchestrated by epigenetic silencing (promoter methylation of B2M and MHC-I heavy chains) and by STAT3-mediated transcriptional repression (Cornel et al., 2020). BCSCs also secrete factors that suppress dendritic cell maturation and cross-presentation capacity, impairing the generation of

functional tumor-antigen-specific CD8+ T cells in draining lymph nodes (Spranger & Gajewski, 2018). The net result is chronic, suboptimal TCR stimulation sufficient to induce exhaustion but insufficient to generate robust effector responses.

4.7 Recruitment of Immuno-suppressive Cellular Partners:

BCSCs orchestrate the accumulation of immunosuppressive cell populations that collectively enforce CD8+ T cell exhaustion. Through CXCL12/CXCR4 and CCL2/CCR2 axes, BCSCs recruit monocytic and granulocytic MDSCs into the TME. MDSCs suppress CTLs through arginase-1-mediated arginine depletion, nitric oxide production, reactive oxygen species generation and direct contact-dependent suppression via PD-L1 and ADAM17 (DeNardo & Ruffell, 2019). BCSC-derived IL-10, M-CSF and IL-4 polarize tumor-associated macrophages (TAMs) towards M2/tolerogenic phenotype; M2 TAMs suppress CTLs via IL-10, TGF-β, PD-L1 and metabolic mechanisms. BCSCs produce TGF-β and CCL22 to recruit FoxP3+ Tregs, which directly suppress CD8+ T cells through IL-35, IL-10, TGF-β, and CTLA-4-mediated competition for CD80/86 (Vitale et al., 2021). Cancer-associated fibroblasts (CAFs), educated by BCSC-derived factors, remodel the extracellular matrix to create physical barriers to CTL infiltration and produce immunosuppressive factors including FAP, CXCL12 and IL-6 (Chen & Mellman, 2017).

5. Clinical and Prognostic Significance:

The co-occurrence of high BCSC abundance and CD8+ T cell exhaustion signatures in breast tumors carries significant prognostic weight. Gene expression studies have identified an 'immune excluded' or 'immune desert' phenotype in breast tumors enriched for BCSC markers, associated with poor overall survival, reduced pathological complete response to neoadjuvant chemotherapy and resistance to checkpoint immunotherapy (Bruni et al., 2020). Single-cell RNA sequencing (scRNA-seq) studies of breast cancer have delineated the transcriptional trajectories of CD8+ T cells within the TME, revealing that proximity to ALDH1hi or CD44hi tumor cells correlates with more advanced stages of exhaustion, higher TOX expression and reduced effector gene accessibility (Oliveira et al., 2021).

In TNBC, where immunotherapy has shown the most promise, the presence of high BCSC signatures in pre-treatment biopsies predicts poor response to PD-L1/PD-1 blockade, consistent with the notion that BCSCs not only drive exhaustion but also create a TME architecture that is fundamentally resistant to reinvigoration by single-agent checkpoint blockade. The KEYNOTE-522 trial demonstrated that pembrolizumab added to neoadjuvant

chemotherapy improved event-free survival in early TNBC (Schmid et al., 2022). However, a significant subset of patients with high BCSC burden did not benefit from the therapy. These clinical observations reinforce the biological importance of the BCSC–CTL exhaustion axis and underscore the need for therapies that specifically target this interaction.

6. Strategies to Overcome CSC-Mediated CD8+ T Cell Exhaustion:

6.1 Immune Checkpoint Blockade:

Immune checkpoint inhibitors targeting PD-1 (pembrolizumab, nivolumab), PD-L1 (atezolizumab, durvalumab) and CTLA-4 (ipilimumab) remain the cornerstone of T cell reinvigoration strategies. By blocking PD-1/PD-L1 and CTLA-4/CD80-86 interactions, ICIs restore TCR signaling in exhausted Tpex cells, promoting their proliferation and acquisition of partial effector functions (Kallies et al., 2020). However, terminally exhausted cells are largely unresponsive. Dual checkpoint blockade (PD-1 + LAG-3, PD-1 + TIM-3, PD-1 + TIGIT) has shown superior reinvigoration of exhausted T cells compared to monotherapy in preclinical models and is under active clinical investigation in breast cancer (Morad et al., 2021).

6.2 Targeting BCSCs Directly:

Eliminating or reprogramming BCSCs is a logical upstream strategy to prevent their continuous induction of T cell exhaustion. Several BCSC-associated pathways are targetable. Notch inhibition with gamma-secretase inhibitors (GSIs) reduces BCSC self-renewal and simultaneously decreases PD-L1 expression, potentially improving CTL access. Wnt/β-catenin pathway inhibitors (porcupine inhibitors, β-catenin/TCF complex inhibitors) target the self-renewal machinery of BCSCs while also reducing expression of immunosuppressive mediators (Batlle & Clevers, 2017). ALDH1-targeted pro-drug strategies exploit the high ALDH1 activity of BCSCs to deliver cytotoxic payloads selectively to the stem cell compartment. Antibody-drug conjugates (ADCs) targeting BCSC-enriched surface antigens (CD44, EpCAM, LGR5, ICAM-1) combine selective BCSC killing with immunogenic cell death induction, potentially converting the TME from immunosuppressive to immunostimulatory (Duan et al., 2020).

6.3 Epigenetic Therapies:

Given the centrality of epigenetic reprogramming in both BCSC maintenance and CTL exhaustion, epigenetic modulators offer dual mechanistic benefits. DNA methyltransferase inhibitors (DNMTi: 5-azacitidine, decitabine) demethylate effector gene loci in exhausted CD8+ T cells, restoring IFN-γ and granzyme B expression and simultaneously demethylate MICA/B and other NKG2D ligands on tumor cells, enhancing immune recognition (Peng et

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

al., 2015). EZH2 inhibitors (tazemetostat, GSK126) reduce H3K27me3 at effector loci in Tex cells and suppress BCSC self-renewal, which is epigenetically dependent on EZH2 for pluripotency maintenance. HDAC inhibitors (vorinostat, entinostat) remodel chromatin in both BCSCs and exhausted T cells; entinostat specifically reduces MDSC immunosuppressive function by downregulating arginase-1 expression. BET bromodomain inhibitors (JQ1, I-BET762) suppress c-Myc and PD-L1 expression in BCSCs while facilitating re-expression of effector programs in T cells (Khan et al., 2019).

6.4 Metabolic Interventions:

Reversing the metabolic suppression imposed by BCSCs can restore CD8+ T cell fitness. Inhibiting lactate production (LDHA inhibitors, MCT1/4 inhibitors such as AZD3965) reduces TME acidification and improves T cell glycolytic function (Chang et al., 2015). CD39/CD73 axis blockade using antibodies (oleclumab targeting CD73, TTX-030 targeting CD39) or small molecule inhibitors reduces adenosine production and relieves T cell A2AR-mediated suppression. IDO1 inhibitors (epacadostat, linrodostat) restore tryptophan availability in the TME and reduce kynurenine-mediated immunosuppression. Supplementing T cells with mitochondria-protective agents (metformin, IACS-010759) improves mitochondrial fitness and oxidative phosphorylation capacity of exhausted T cells within the hostile BCSC-conditioned microenvironment (Reinfeld et al., 2021).

6.5 TGF-β Pathway Inhibition:

Given the prominent role of BCSC-derived TGF-β in CTL exhaustion, TGF-β blockade represents a compelling strategy. Pan-TGF-β neutralizing antibodies (fresolimumab, NIS793) and TGF-β receptor I kinase inhibitors (galunisertib, vactosertib) block TGF-β-mediated suppression of CD8+ T cell cytolytic programs and reduce Treg differentiation (Bhatt et al., 2021). Bifunctional fusion proteins that simultaneously block PD-L1 and TGF-β (bintrafusp alfa, M7824) have shown activity in breast cancer clinical trials, capitalizing on the complementary mechanisms of these pathways. Combination of TGF-β blockade with PD-1/PD-L1 inhibitors synergistically restores CTL function in BCSC-rich TMEs by simultaneously relieving direct T cell suppression and enabling antigen-presenting cell maturation (Chen & Mellman, 2017).

6.6 Adoptive Cell Therapies:

Adoptive transfer of autologous or allogeneic tumor-specific T cells offers a strategy to overwhelm the exhaustion-inducing capacity of BCSCs with a large bolus of functional

effectors. Tumor-infiltrating lymphocyte (TIL) therapy, wherein TILs are expanded ex vivo from resected tumors and re-infused, has shown activity in metastatic breast cancer. Engineering of TIL products to overexpress dominant-negative TGF-β receptors or to co-express IL-15 can enhance persistence in the suppressive TME (Duan et al., 2020). CAR-T cells directed against BCSC-enriched antigens particularly ROR1, EpCAM, HER2 and CD44 are under preclinical and early clinical development. Novel CAR constructs incorporating IL-15 or IL-21 armoring, PD-1 knockout (using CRISPR-Cas9), or inducible IL-12 production aim to confer resistance to BCSC-mediated exhaustion (Oliveira et al., 2021). T cell receptor (TCR)-engineered T cells targeting BCSC-associated peptides (ALDH1A1-derived, survivin) presented on HLA molecules are also being explored.

6.7 Exosome and Vesicle Pathway Blockade:

Blocking BCSC exosome-mediated immunosuppression is an emerging therapeutic avenue. Inhibitors of neutral sphingomyelinase 2 (nSMase2), including GW4869, reduce exosome secretion and have shown immuno-restorative effects in preclinical tumor models. Targeting exosomal PD-L1 with antibodies that block its interaction with T cell PD-1 may extend the benefit of checkpoint blockade beyond tumor cell PD-L1 (Chen et al., 2018). Engineering dendritic cell-derived exosomes (dexosomes) loaded with BCSC-associated antigens to prime naïve T cells is a complementary exosome-based immunostimulatory approach.

6.8 In Situ Vaccination and Immunogenic Cell Death:

Converting BCSCs from immunosuppressive to immunostimulatory entities through immunogenic cell death (ICD) induction represents an elegant strategy. ICD-inducing agents (anthracyclines, oxaliplatin, hypericin-based photodynamic therapy, certain oncolytic viruses) trigger ER stress responses in tumor cells, inducing calreticulin exposure, HMGB1 release and ATP secretion-the hallmarks of an 'eat-me' and 'find-me' signal that activates dendritic cells to efficiently cross-present tumor antigens (Vitale et al., 2021). When applied to BCSCs, ICD induction can generate BCSC-specific CTL responses that specifically target the stem cell reservoir. Oncolytic viruses that preferentially infect and lyse cancer stem cells, including ALDH1hi cells, can simultaneously debulk the BCSC compartment and provide innate immune activation (Duan et al., 2020).

6.9 Combinatorial and Rational Multipronged Strategies:

Given the multiplicity and redundancy of BCSC-mediated immunosuppression mechanisms, single-agent strategies are unlikely to be sufficient in most patients. Rational combinations are

being pursued that simultaneously target BCSCs, their immunosuppressive outputs and the exhaustion state of T cells. For example, ALDH inhibition (depleting BCSCs) combined with TGF-β blockade (reversing a key suppressive mechanism) and PD-1 checkpoint blockade (reinvigorating exhausted Tpex cells) represents a mechanistically complementary triplet (Schmid et al., 2022; Bhatt et al., 2021). Similarly, DNMT inhibitor combined with EZH2 inhibitor and anti-PD-L1 is under investigation, exploiting simultaneous epigenetic de-repression of T cell effector programs and BCSC self-renewal suppression (Peng et al., 2015).

Bispecific antibodies (e.g., CD3 × CD44 or CD3 × EpCAM) redirect endogenous T cells to BCSC targets, potentially bypassing exhaustion by providing strong, non-exhaustion-inducing TCR stimuli. Nanoparticle-based delivery systems offer the possibility of co-delivering BCSC-targeting agents and immunostimulatory payloads (IL-15, IL-12, TLR agonists) directly to the TME, concentrating immunostimulatory effects within the spatial niche where BCSC-CTL interactions occur (Morad et al., 2021).

7. EMERGING AND FUTURE DIRECTIONS:

Single-cell and spatial transcriptomics are rapidly transforming our understanding of the BCSC-CTL exhaustion interface. Spatial transcriptomics platforms (Visium, MERFISH, CosMX) enable simultaneous mapping of BCSC and exhausted T cell niches within intact tumor tissue, revealing the microanatomical organization of immunosuppression and identifying key cellular intermediaries (Oliveira et al., 2021). Single-cell ATAC-seq allows chromatin accessibility profiling of individual T cells along the exhaustion continuum, facilitating identification of the epigenetic checkpoints that most potently restrict reinvigoration and the interventions best suited to overcome them (Khan et al., 2019).

Artificial intelligence and machine learning are being applied to integrate multi-omic breast cancer datasets to predict which patients harbor BCSC-rich, T-cell-exhausted TMEs and are therefore most likely to benefit from CSC-targeted immunotherapy combinations (Vitale et al., 2021). Liquid biopsy approaches quantifying circulating BCSC-derived exosomal PD-L1, BCSC-enriched circulating tumor cells or epigenetically modified cell-free DNA from exhausted T cells may enable non-invasive monitoring of this immunosuppressive axis and guide adaptive treatment strategies (Chen et al., 2018). The emerging field of synthetic biology offers novel tools, including T cells engineered to sense and respond to BCSC-specific inputs (e.g., ALDH1 activity, Notch ligand expression) with targeted killing responses. Gene circuit engineering could create T cells that autonomously upregulate survival and effector programs in response to TGF-β or adenosine, converting suppressive signals into activating ones.

CRISPR-based in-vivo base editing of T cell epigenomes-removing exhaustion-associated methylation marks at effector loci is an ambitious but scientifically grounded approach to durable T cell reprogramming (Kallies et al., 2020).

8. CONCLUSIONS:

The relationship between BCSCa and CD8+ T cell exhaustion constitutes a pivotal, multi-layered immunosuppressive axis that fundamentally undermines anti-tumor immunity and therapeutic efficacy. BCSCs drive CTL exhaustion through an intricate network of mechanisms: high PD-L1 expression, immunosuppressive cytokine secretion (TGF-β, IL-10, IL-6), metabolic reprogramming of the TME, extracellular vesicle-mediated epigenetic delivery, antigen presentation defects and recruitment of suppressive cellular partners (Dongre et al., 2017; Spranger & Gajewski, 2018; DeNardo & Ruffell, 2019). These mechanisms converge to impose stable epigenetic changes on CD8+ T cells that progressively restrict their effector capacity and responsiveness to immune checkpoint blockade (Khan et al., 2019; Pauken & Wherry, 2015).

Overcoming this axis requires multipronged strategies that simultaneously eliminate or reprogram BCSCs, reverse the immunosuppressive microenvironment they engineer and restore CD8+ T cell functional capacity at the transcriptional and epigenetic levels. The synergy between BCSC-targeted agents, epigenetic modulators, metabolic interventions and immune checkpoint inhibitors holds considerable therapeutic promise (Morad et al., 2021; Schmid et al., 2022). As our molecular understanding of the BCSC-CTL exhaustion interface deepens enabled by single-cell, spatial and multi-omic technologies-the opportunity to design rational, personalized immunotherapeutic combinations for breast cancer patients with high BCSC burden is closer to realization than ever before.

REFERENCES:

Al-Hajj, M., Wicha, M. S., Benito-Hernandez, A., Morrison, S. J., & Clarke, M. F. (2003). Prospective identification of tumorigenic breast cancer cells. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA, 100(7), 3983–3988.

Batlle, E., & Clevers, H. (2017). Cancer stem cells revisited. Nature Medicine, 23(10), 1124–1134.

Bhatt, D. L., et al. (2021). Targeting the TGF-β pathway in breast cancer. Oncogene, 40(25), 4359–4377.

Bruni, D., Angell, H. K., & Galon, J. (2020). The immune contexture and Immunoscore in cancer prognosis and therapeutic efficacy. Nature Reviews Cancer, 20(11), 662–680.

Chang, C. H., et al. (2015). Metabolic competition in the tumor microenvironment is a driver of cancer progression. Cell, 162(6), 1229–1241.

Chen, D. S., & Mellman, I. (2017). Elements of cancer immunity and the cancer–immune set point. Nature, 541(7637), 321–330.

Chen, G., et al. (2018). Exosomal PD-L1 contributes to immunosuppression and is associated with anti-PD-1 response. Nature, 560(7718), 382–386.

Cornel, A. M., Mimpen, I. L., & Nierkens, S. (2020). MHC class I downregulation in cancer: Underlying mechanisms and potential targets for cancer immunotherapy. Cancers, 12(7), 1760.

DeNardo, D. G., & Ruffell, B. (2019). Macrophages as regulators of tumour immunity and immunotherapy. Nature Reviews Immunology, 19(6), 369–382.

Dongre, A., et al. (2017). Epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition contributes to immunosuppression in breast carcinomas. Cancer Research, 77(15), 3982–3989.

Duan, Q., et al. (2020). Turning cold into hot: Firing up the tumor microenvironment. Trends in Cancer, 6(7), 605–618.

Kallies, A., Zehn, D., & Utzschneider, D. T. (2020). Precursor exhausted T cells: Key to successful immunotherapy? Nature Reviews Immunology, 20(2), 128–136.

Khan, O., et al. (2019). TOX transcriptionally and epigenetically programs CD8+ T cell exhaustion. Nature, 571(7764), 211–218.

Miller, B. C., et al. (2019). Subsets of exhausted CD8+ T cells differentially mediate tumor control and respond to checkpoint blockade. Nature Immunology, 20(3), 326–336.

Morad, G., et al. (2021). Hallmarks of response, resistance, and toxicity to immune checkpoint blockade. Cell, 184(21), 5309–5337.

Oliveira, G., et al. (2021). Phenotype, specificity and avidity of antitumour CD8+ T cells in melanoma. Nature, 596(7870), 119–125.

Pauken, K. E., & Wherry, E. J. (2015). Overcoming T cell exhaustion in infection and cancer. Trends in Immunology, 36(4), 265–276.

Peng, D., et al. (2015). Epigenetic silencing of TH1-type chemokines shapes tumour immunity and immunotherapy. Nature, 527(7577), 249–253.

Reinfeld, B. I., et al. (2021). Cell-programmed nutrient partitioning in the tumour microenvironment. Nature, 593(7858), 282–288.

Sade-Feldman, M., et al. (2018). Defining T cell states associated with response to checkpoint immunotherapy in melanoma. Cell, 175(4), 998–1013.

Schietinger, A., et al. (2016). Tumor-specific T cell dysfunction is a dynamic antigen-driven differentiation program initiated early during tumorigenesis. Immunity, 45(2), 389–401.

Schmid, P., et al. (2022). Pembrolizumab for early triple-negative breast cancer (KEYNOTE-522). New England Journal of Medicine, 387(3), 217–226.

Spranger, S., & Gajewski, T. F. (2018). Impact of oncogenic pathways on evasion of antitumour immune responses. Nature Reviews Cancer, 18(3), 139–147.

Vitale, I., et al. (2021). Intratumoral heterogeneity in cancer progression and response to immunotherapy. Nature Medicine, 27(2), 212–224.

Wherry, E. J., & Kurachi, M. (2015). Molecular and cellular insights into T cell exhaustion. Nature Reviews Immunology, 15(8), 486–499.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Chapter 13

Artificial Intelligence in Nano-Drug Vaccine Development: Advances, Applications, and Future Perspectives

Priyanka Chakraborty*

Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata- 700121

**Corresponding Author's Email ID: priyankachakraborty44@gmail.com*

ABSTRACT

Artificial intelligence (AI) and nanotechnology have emerged as two transformative technologies that are reshaping biomedical research and pharmaceutical innovation. Their integration has opened new avenues in vaccine design, development, and delivery systems. Traditional vaccine development is often time-consuming, expensive, and dependent on extensive experimental screening. AI-driven computational models have significantly accelerated the discovery of antigen targets, prediction of immune responses, and optimization of nanoparticle-based drug delivery systems (Mak et al., 2023). Nanotechnology-based vaccine platforms, including lipid nanoparticles, polymeric nanoparticles, virus-like particles, and inorganic nanomaterials, offer several advantages such as enhanced antigen stability, targeted delivery, and improved immunogenicity (Zhang et al., 2021).

The rapid development of mRNA vaccines during the COVID-19 pandemic demonstrated the power of integrating computational tools and nanotechnology in vaccine production (Pardi et al., 2018). AI-based machine learning algorithms are now widely used to analyze biological datasets, design nanoparticle formulations, and predict vaccine efficacy (Topol, 2019). This review explores the role of AI in nano-drug vaccine development, including computational vaccinology, nanocarrier optimization, clinical translation, manufacturing strategies, and regulatory challenges. The future potential of AI-driven personalized nanovaccines and precision immunization strategies is also discussed.

Keywords: Cancer stem cells (CSCs); CD8+ T cell exhaustion; Breast cancer; Tumor microenvironment; Immune checkpoint; Immunotherapy; CAR-T cells; Epigenetic reprogramming

1. INTRODUCTION:

Vaccination remains one of the most effective strategies for preventing infectious diseases and improving global public health. Over the past century, vaccines have contributed significantly to the control and eradication of life-threatening diseases such as smallpox, polio, and measles (Plotkin et al., 2017). Despite these successes, conventional vaccine development remains a lengthy and costly process that often requires more than a decade from discovery to clinical approval.

Recent advances in artificial intelligence (AI) and nanotechnology have introduced new opportunities to accelerate vaccine development and improve drug delivery systems. AI refers to computational methods capable of simulating human cognitive processes such as learning, pattern recognition, and decision-making (Russell & Norvig, 2020). In biomedical research, AI technologies-including machine learning, deep learning, and natural language processing- are used to analyse large biological datasets and identify patterns that may not be detectable using traditional analytical methods (Esteva et al., 2019).

Nanotechnology has also revolutionized pharmaceutical sciences by enabling the design of nanoscale drug delivery systems capable of improving therapeutic efficacy and reducing toxicity (Peer et al., 2007). Nanoparticles ranging from 10 to 200 nanometers can efficiently deliver drugs and vaccine antigens to specific cells or tissues. These nanocarriers enhance antigen stability, improve cellular uptake, and facilitate targeted immune responses (Zhang et al., 2021).

The COVID-19 pandemic highlighted the importance of integrating computational technologies with nanomedicine. The development of mRNA vaccines utilizing lipid nanoparticle delivery systems demonstrated how advanced technologies could drastically reduce vaccine development timelines (Pardi et al., 2018). AI-based computational models helped optimize lipid nanoparticle formulations and predict antigenic epitopes, enabling rapid vaccine design.

In recent years, the convergence of AI and nanotechnology has created a new interdisciplinary field known as AI-driven nanomedicine (Table 1). This field integrates computational modelling, data science, and nanotechnology to design advanced drug delivery systems and personalized therapeutics (Mak et al., 2023). AI algorithms can analyse large datasets generated from nanomaterial characterization, biological experiments, and clinical studies, allowing researchers to optimize nanoparticle formulations with greater precision.

Table 1: Key Applications of AI in Nanovaccine Development

Application	Benefit	Citation
Antigen discovery	Rapid screening of targets	(Mak et al., 2023)
Epitope prediction	Improved immunogenic candidate selection	(Jespersen et al., 2017)
Nanoparticle optimization	Reduced trial-and-error formulation	(Butler et al., 2018)
mRNA delivery systems	Enhanced stability and uptake	(Pardi et al., 2018)

AI-driven models accelerate candidate selection and nanoparticle optimization in modern vaccinology (Topol, 2019; Mak et al., 2023).

This review aims to provide a comprehensive overview of AI applications in nano-drug vaccine development. The review discusses computational vaccine design, AI-assisted nanoparticle engineering, clinical applications, and future perspectives for AI-driven nano vaccines.

2. ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE IN VACCINE DEVELOPMENT:

2.1 Overview of Artificial Intelligence in Biomedical Research:

Artificial intelligence has emerged as one of the most influential technologies in modern biomedical research (Table 2-3). Machine learning algorithms can analyse complex biological datasets, identify patterns, and generate predictive models that assist researchers in drug discovery and vaccine development (Topol, 2019).

Machine learning can be broadly categorized into three major approaches:

i. Supervised learning – models trained using labelled datasets
ii. Unsupervised learning – models identifying patterns without labelled data
iii. Reinforcement learning – models learning through trial-and-error interactions

In vaccine development, supervised learning is commonly used to predict antigenicity and immunogenic responses (Sanchez-Lengeling & Aspuru-Guzik, 2018).

Table 2: Comparative Features of Vaccine Platforms

Application	Benefit	Citation
Antigen discovery	Rapid screening of targets	(Mak et al., 2023)
Epitope prediction	Improved immunogenic candidate selection	(Jespersen et al., 2017)
Nanoparticle optimization	Reduced trial-and-error formulation	(Butler et al., 2018)
mRNA delivery systems	Enhanced stability and uptake	(Pardi et al., 2018)

AI-driven models accelerate candidate selection and nanoparticle optimization in modern vaccinology (Topol, 2019; Mak et al., 2023).

Table 3: Comparative Features of Vaccine Platforms

Platform	Advantage	Citation
LNP	Efficient mRNA delivery	(Pardi et al., 2018)
Polymeric NP	Controlled release	(Zhang et al., 2021)
VLP	Strong immunogenicity	(Zhao et al., 2014)

2.2 AI-Driven Antigen Discovery:

Antigen discovery is a crucial step in vaccine development because antigens determine the immune response generated by the vaccine. Traditionally, antigen discovery required extensive laboratory experimentation and screening of pathogen proteins.

AI-driven computational vaccinology has significantly accelerated this process. Machine learning models can analyze pathogen genomes and identify proteins that are most likely to trigger immune responses (Rappuoli et al., 2016).

Reverse vaccinology, combined with AI algorithms, enables the rapid identification of vaccine targets by analyzing genomic data from pathogens. This approach has been successfully applied to several infectious diseases, including meningitis and influenza (Pizza et al., 2000).

Deep learning models can also predict B-cell and T-cell epitopes based on protein sequences and structural data (Jespersen et al., 2017). These predictive models help researchers prioritize vaccine candidates before conducting laboratory experiments.

3. NANOTECHNOLOGY IN VACCINE DELIVERY:

3.1 Nanoparticle-Based Vaccine Platforms:

Nanoparticle-based vaccine delivery systems have gained significant attention in recent years due to their ability to improve antigen delivery and immune activation.

Common nanovaccine platforms include:

i. Lipid nanoparticles
ii. Polymeric nanoparticles
iii. Virus-like particles
iv. Metallic nanoparticles
v. Solid lipid nanoparticles
vi. Dendrimers and nanogels

These nanoparticles can encapsulate antigens and deliver them directly to antigen-presenting cells such as dendritic cells and macrophages (Bachmann & Jennings, 2010).

Nanoparticles also protect antigens from degradation and allow controlled release of vaccine components, thereby improving immunogenicity.

3.2 Lipid Nanoparticles in mRNA Vaccines:

Lipid nanoparticles (LNPs) represent one of the most successful nanotechnology platforms in modern vaccinology. LNPs consist of four main components:

i. Ionizable lipids
ii. Phospholipids
iii. Cholesterol
iv. Polyethylene glycol lipids

These components form a protective structure that encapsulates nucleic acids such as mRNA and facilitates their delivery into host cells (Hou et al., 2021).

LNP-based vaccines were widely used during the COVID-19 pandemic and demonstrated high levels of efficacy and safety.

4.AI-DRIVEN NANOPARTICLE DESIGN:

The design and optimization of nanoparticle-based drug delivery systems is a complex process involving multiple variables such as particle size, surface charge, drug loading capacity, and release kinetics.

Artificial intelligence algorithms are increasingly used to optimize nanoparticle formulations. Machine learning models can analyze experimental datasets and predict optimal formulation parameters (Butler et al., 2018).

Artificial neural networks have been used to model nanoparticle synthesis and predict nanoparticle characteristics based on formulation parameters (Jumper et al., 2021).

AI-driven approaches significantly reduce trial-and-error experimentation and accelerate the development of nanomedicine formulations.

5. APPLICATIONS OF AI-DRIVEN NANOVACCINES IN INFECTIOUS DISEASE CONTROL:

5.1 AI-Assisted Vaccine Development for Viral Diseases:

Infectious diseases caused by viruses remain a major global health challenge. Pathogens such as influenza virus, HIV, SARS-CoV-2, Ebola virus, and Zika virus continue to pose significant threats to public health systems worldwide. Traditional vaccine development approaches rely heavily on empirical experimentation, which can take many years before a vaccine candidate reaches clinical approval (Plotkin et al., 2017).

Artificial intelligence has dramatically accelerated vaccine research by enabling rapid analysis of pathogen genomes and prediction of antigenic targets. Machine learning algorithms can process large genomic datasets to identify viral proteins that are likely to elicit strong immune responses (Mak et al., 2023). These computational tools enable researchers to prioritize vaccine candidates before conducting costly laboratory experiments.

For example, AI-based epitope prediction algorithms can identify B-cell and T-cell epitopes in viral proteins, allowing the design of vaccines that specifically target immunogenic regions of pathogens (Jespersen et al., 2017). These approaches have been widely applied in the development of vaccines against influenza and HIV (De Groot & Rappuoli, 2004).

Nanotechnology plays an equally important role in infectious disease vaccine delivery. Nanoparticles can encapsulate viral antigens or nucleic acids and deliver them efficiently to immune cells such as dendritic cells and macrophages. This targeted delivery enhances antigen presentation and stimulates stronger immune responses (Zhang et al., 2021).

The COVID-19 pandemic demonstrated the powerful synergy between artificial intelligence and nanotechnology. The rapid development of mRNA vaccines by companies such as Pfizer-BioNTech and Moderna relied heavily on lipid nanoparticle (LNP) delivery systems that protect mRNA molecules and facilitate their uptake by host cells (Pardi et al., 2018). AI-driven computational tools helped optimize the lipid compositions used in these nanoparticles, improving stability and delivery efficiency.

Machine learning models have also been used to analyse viral mutations and predict potential vaccine escape variants. These predictive capabilities allow researchers to update vaccine formulations rapidly when new viral variants emerge (Callaway, 2020).

5.2 Nanoparticle-Based Vaccines for Bacterial Infections:

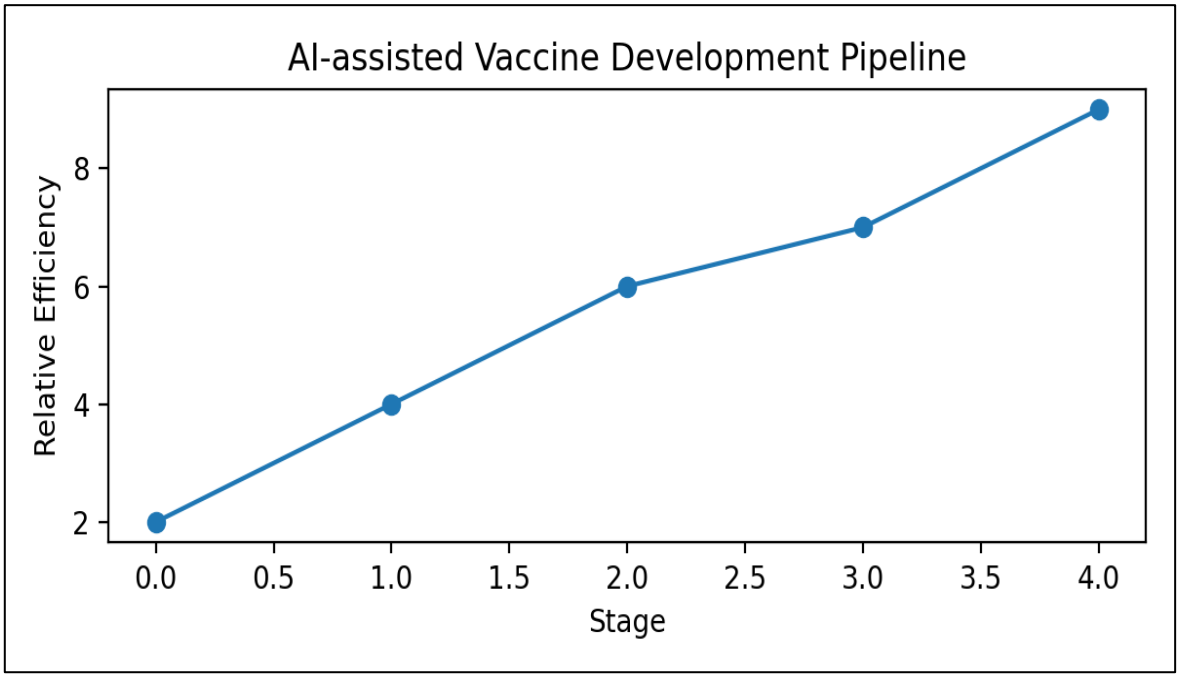
While viral vaccines receive significant attention, bacterial infections also represent a major global health burden (Figure 1). Diseases such as tuberculosis, meningitis, and antibiotic-resistant infections continue to challenge healthcare systems worldwide (Rappuoli et al., 2016).

AI-driven reverse vaccinology has been widely used to identify bacterial vaccine targets. This approach involves analysing bacterial genomes to identify proteins that are conserved across strains and capable of triggering immune responses (Pizza et al., 2000). Machine learning algorithms can analyse thousands of bacterial genes and identify potential vaccine candidates with high accuracy.

Nanoparticle-based delivery systems offer additional advantages in bacterial vaccine development. Polymeric nanoparticles and liposomes can encapsulate bacterial antigens and

protect them from degradation while enabling controlled release (Bachmann & Jennings, 2010). These nanocarriers enhance antigen presentation and stimulate both humoral and cellular immune responses.

Figure 1: Scenario of how representative gains in development efficiency across pipeline stages (Mak et al., 2023; Topol, 2019).



Recent studies have explored the use of gold nanoparticles and silica nanoparticles as vaccine carriers for bacterial antigens. These nanomaterials possess unique physicochemical properties that improve antigen stability and promote immune activation (Peer et al., 2007).

5.3 AI-Enabled Pandemic Preparedness:

Artificial intelligence has also become an important tool for pandemic preparedness. During emerging outbreaks, AI algorithms can rapidly analyze pathogen genomes, predict antigenic structures, and identify potential vaccine targets within days of sequencing the pathogen genome (Mak et al., 2023).

AI-driven surveillance systems can also monitor global disease trends and detect early signals of outbreaks. By combining epidemiological data with machine learning models, researchers can predict disease spread and guide vaccine development strategies (Topol, 2019). Nanotechnology further enhances pandemic preparedness by enabling rapid vaccine manufacturing. Nanoparticle-based vaccine platforms are modular and adaptable, meaning that new vaccine formulations can be developed quickly when new pathogens emerge.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

6. AI-DRIVEN NANOVACCINES IN CANCER IMMUNOTHERAPY:

6.1 Personalized Cancer Vaccines:

Cancer immunotherapy has emerged as a promising strategy for treating various types of malignancies. Unlike traditional vaccines designed to prevent infectious diseases, cancer vaccines aim to stimulate the immune system to recognize and destroy tumour cells.

Artificial intelligence plays a crucial role in identifying tumour-specific antigens known as neoantigens. These neoantigens arise from genetic mutations within tumour cells and can serve as targets for personalized cancer vaccines (Sahin & Türeci, 2018).

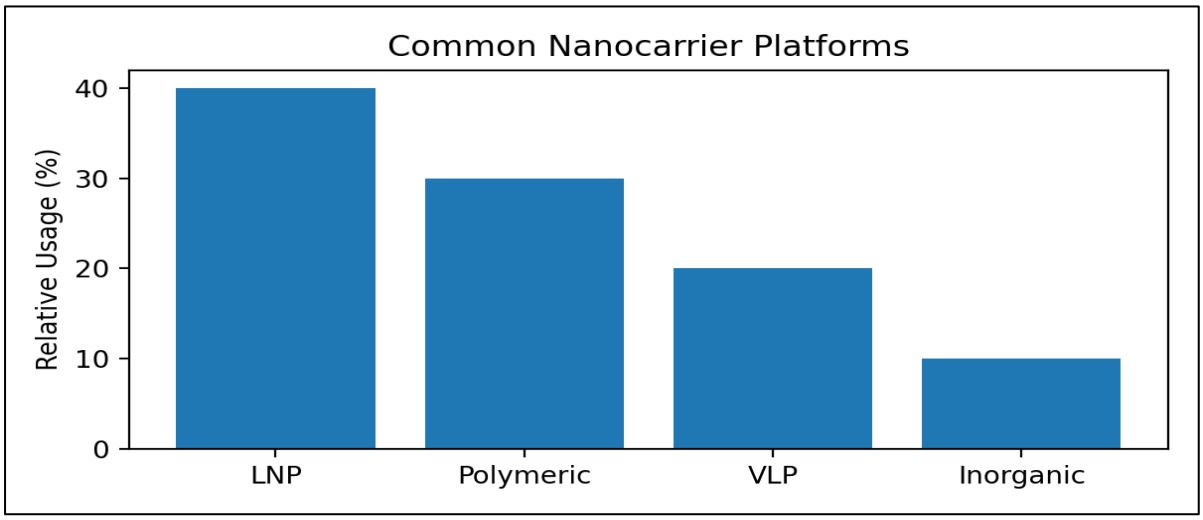
Machine learning algorithms analyse tumour genomic data to identify mutations that produce immunogenic peptides capable of binding to major histocompatibility complex molecules. These predictions allow researchers to design personalized vaccines tailored to an individual patient's tumour profile (Ott et al., 2017).

Nanoparticle delivery systems are essential for cancer vaccine development because they protect fragile nucleic acids and peptides from degradation. Lipid nanoparticles, polymeric nanoparticles, and dendrimers are widely used to deliver tumour antigens and immunostimulatory molecules to immune cells (Zhang et al., 2021).

6.2 RNA-Based Nanovaccines for Cancer Treatment:

RNA vaccines represent one of the most promising platforms for cancer immunotherapy (Figure 2). Messenger RNA molecules encode tumor antigens that can be expressed inside host cells, allowing the immune system to recognize cancer cells.

Figure 2: Common Nanocarrier Platforms Used in Vaccines. It summarizes common nanoparticle systems used for antigen delivery (Zhang et al., 2021; Bachmann & Jennings, 2010).



However, RNA molecules are highly unstable and require protective delivery systems. Lipid nanoparticles provide an effective solution by encapsulating RNA molecules and facilitating their intracellular delivery (Pardi et al., 2018).

Artificial intelligence is increasingly used to optimize RNA vaccine sequences and nanoparticle formulations. Machine learning models can predict RNA secondary structures and identify sequence modifications that improve stability and translation efficiency (Jumper et al., 2021).

Clinical trials have already demonstrated promising results for RNA-based cancer vaccines targeting melanoma and other malignancies (Ott et al., 2017).

6.3 Combination Therapies with AI-Guided Nanomedicine:

Nanovaccines can also be combined with other immunotherapy approaches such as immune checkpoint inhibitors. These therapies block inhibitory signals that prevent immune cells from attacking tumours.

AI-driven predictive models help identify patients who are most likely to respond to combination therapies. By analysing patient genomic and clinical data, machine learning algorithms can personalize treatment strategies and improve clinical outcomes (Topol, 2019).

7. ROLE OF AI IN CLINICAL TRIALS AND REGULATORY APPROVAL:

7.1 AI-Assisted Clinical Trial Design:

Clinical trials represent one of the most expensive and time-consuming stages of vaccine development. AI technologies are increasingly used to optimize trial design and participant selection.

Machine learning algorithms analyze electronic health records and demographic data to identify suitable participants for clinical studies. These tools help ensure that clinical trials include diverse populations and reduce recruitment timelines (Esteva et al., 2019).

AI models can also predict potential adverse events and monitor vaccine safety during clinical trials. Real-time data analysis enables rapid identification of safety signals and improves risk management.

7.2 AI for Vaccine Safety Monitoring:

Post-marketing surveillance is essential for monitoring vaccine safety after regulatory approval. AI-based pharmacovigilance systems analyze large datasets from healthcare records and adverse event reporting systems.

Natural language processing algorithms can extract safety information from clinical reports and social media platforms, enabling rapid detection of potential safety concerns (Mak et al., 2023).

7.3 Regulatory Considerations for AI-Driven Nanovaccines:

Regulatory agencies such as the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and the European Medicines Agency (EMA) are developing guidelines for AI-based medical technologies. These guidelines emphasize transparency, algorithm validation, and data integrity.

Nanoparticle-based vaccines also require rigorous safety evaluation because their physicochemical properties can influence biodistribution and toxicity. Regulatory frameworks must adapt to accommodate the unique characteristics of nanomedicine products (Peer et al., 2007).

8. AI IN VACCINE MANUFACTURING AND SUPPLY CHAIN OPTIMIZATION:

8.1 Smart Manufacturing of Nanovaccines:

Artificial intelligence is transforming pharmaceutical manufacturing by enabling **smart** manufacturing systems. Machine learning algorithms can monitor production parameters in real time and optimize manufacturing processes.

For nanoparticle-based vaccines, AI models can predict critical quality attributes such as particle size, encapsulation efficiency, and stability. These predictive capabilities reduce manufacturing errors and improve product consistency.

8.2 AI-Driven Process Optimization:

Manufacturing nanoparticle-based vaccines requires precise control of formulation parameters. AI-based design-of-experiment approaches can analyze multiple variables simultaneously and identify optimal conditions for nanoparticle synthesis (Butler et al., 2018).

Deep learning models have also been used to predict nanoparticle properties based on formulation parameters such as lipid composition, solvent ratios, and mixing conditions.

8.3 Supply Chain and Distribution Optimization:

Global vaccine distribution presents logistical challenges, particularly during pandemics. AI-driven supply chain management systems can optimize vaccine distribution routes, monitor storage conditions, and reduce wastage.

Predictive analytics tools help governments and healthcare organizations allocate vaccine supplies efficiently based on epidemiological data and population demographics (Callaway, 2020).

9. CHALLENGES AND LIMITATIONS OF AI-DRIVEN NANOVACCINE DEVELOPMENT:

Despite the remarkable progress in artificial intelligence (AI)-guided vaccine design and nanotechnology-based delivery systems, several scientific, technological, and regulatory challenges still limit the widespread application of AI-driven nanovaccines. Addressing these limitations is critical to ensure safe, reproducible, and scalable vaccine development.

9.1 Data Availability and Quality Issues:

AI algorithms rely heavily on large, well-annotated datasets derived from genomics, proteomics, immunological experiments, and clinical trials. However, immunological datasets remain fragmented and inconsistent across different research platforms. Many available datasets contain incomplete information, heterogeneous experimental protocols, or limited population diversity, which can introduce biases into machine-learning models (Anderson et al., 2020).

For example, epitope prediction models depend on experimentally validated antigen–antibody interactions. Yet the number of experimentally confirmed epitopes remains relatively small compared to the vast diversity of pathogen proteins. As a result, predictive models may produce inaccurate immunogenicity predictions or overlook rare but clinically relevant immune responses (He et al., 2023).

Moreover, training datasets often represent specific geographical populations, potentially limiting the global applicability of AI-designed vaccines. Differences in human leukocyte antigen (HLA) distributions across populations may significantly affect vaccine efficacy, highlighting the need for globally representative immunological datasets (Poland et al., 2018).

Another significant limitation is the integration of heterogeneous biological data types. Vaccine development requires combining genomic sequences, protein structures, immune-cell signalling pathways, and patient clinical data. Integrating these multi-omics datasets into AI models remains a major computational challenge (Topol, 2019).

9.2 Interpretability of AI Models:

Many modern AI systems, particularly deep learning models, function as "black boxes," making it difficult for researchers to interpret how predictions are generated. While such models may achieve high predictive accuracy, their lack of interpretability raises concerns regarding reliability and reproducibility in biomedical research (Jumper et al., 2021).

In vaccine development, explainability is particularly important because regulatory agencies require mechanistic understanding of vaccine safety and efficacy. Without transparent algorithms, it becomes difficult to justify why a specific antigen or nanoparticle formulation was selected by an AI system (Anderson et al., 2020).

Explainable artificial intelligence (XAI) techniques have recently emerged to address this issue. These methods aim to provide interpretable insights into model decisions by identifying key features that influence predictions. However, XAI frameworks remain underdeveloped in immunology and nanomedicine research (Bachmann and Jennings, 2010).

9.3 Computational and Infrastructure Limitations:

AI-driven vaccine design requires substantial computational resources, including high-performance computing clusters, cloud infrastructure, and specialized bioinformatics software. Many academic laboratories and developing countries lack access to such infrastructure, limiting the widespread adoption of AI technologies in vaccine research (Baden et al., 2021).

Large-scale deep learning models require training on millions of biological sequences or molecular simulations, which can consume enormous computational power and energy resources. The development of more efficient algorithms and distributed computing frameworks will be necessary to overcome these limitations (Butler, K. T., Davies, D. W., et al.-2018)

9.4 Biological Complexity of the Immune System:

The human immune system is an extremely complex network involving numerous cell types, cytokines, signalling pathways, and genetic variations. Accurately modelling this complexity remains a major challenge for AI-based predictive systems (Callaway et al., 2020).

Immune responses depend on multiple factors, including host genetics, age, microbiome composition, and environmental influences. Current AI models often simplify these interactions, which may reduce predictive accuracy in real-world scenarios (Chen et al., 2019).

For instance, predicting long-term immune memory or vaccine-induced protection remains difficult because immune responses evolve dynamically over time. Modelling such temporal immune dynamics requires advanced computational frameworks integrating longitudinal immunological datasets (De Groot and Rappuoli., 2004).

9.5 Regulatory and Ethical Considerations:

The integration of AI into vaccine development also raises regulatory and ethical concerns. Regulatory agencies such as the FDA and EMA currently lack standardized frameworks for evaluating AI-generated vaccine designs or algorithm-driven drug discovery pipelines (Esteva et al., 2019).

Ethical issues include:

- Data privacy and patient confidentiality
- Algorithmic bias affecting underrepresented populations
- Transparency and accountability in AI decision-making

Ensuring ethical AI deployment will require international collaboration among scientists, policymakers, and regulatory authorities (Jespersen, M. C., Peters, B., Nielsen, M., & Marcatili, P.-2017).

9.6 Manufacturing and Scalability Challenges:

While AI can accelerate vaccine discovery, translating computational predictions into manufacturable vaccine formulations remains challenging. Nanoparticle synthesis requires precise control over size, surface charge, and composition to ensure consistent vaccine quality (Koff et al., 2013).

Scaling laboratory-developed nanovaccine formulations to industrial manufacturing levels often introduces variability in particle properties, which can affect vaccine efficacy and safety. Advanced process-optimization tools and automated manufacturing systems may help overcome these challenges (Liu et al., 2021).

10. FUTURE PERSPECTIVES AND EMERGING TECHNOLOGIES:

The convergence of artificial intelligence, nanotechnology, and biotechnology is expected to revolutionize vaccine development over the coming decades. Several emerging technologies may further enhance AI-driven nanovaccine platforms.

10.1 Integration of Multi-Omics Data:

Future vaccine design strategies will increasingly rely on integrating multi-omics datasets, including genomics, transcriptomics, proteomics, metabolomics, and immunomics. AI algorithms capable of analyzing these datasets simultaneously can identify complex biological patterns associated with immune protection (Mak, K. K., Pichika, M. R., & Yeap, S. K. -2023). Such integrative approaches may enable the development of **personalized vaccines**, tailored to an individual's genetic and immunological profile.

10.2 Digital Twin Technology in Immunology:

Digital twin models represent computational simulations of biological systems that replicate physiological processes in real time. In vaccine development, digital twins could simulate how an individual's immune system responds to vaccination, allowing researchers to predict vaccine efficacy before clinical testing (Ott et al., 2017).

Combining AI with digital twin technology may enable personalized vaccine optimization and reduce the need for extensive clinical trials.

10.3 Generative AI for Vaccine Design:

Recent advances in generative AI models, including generative adversarial networks (GANs) and transformer-based architectures, have opened new possibilities for designing novel antigen sequences and nanoparticle structures (Pardi et al., 2018).

These algorithms can generate synthetic antigen candidates optimized for immunogenicity, stability, and safety. Generative models can also design novel nanocarrier architectures that improve antigen delivery and immune activation.

10.4 AI-Driven mRNA and Nanoparticle Vaccines:

Messenger RNA (mRNA) vaccines have gained global attention following their success in combating the COVID-19 pandemic. AI can significantly enhance mRNA vaccine development by optimizing RNA sequence stability, translation efficiency, and nanoparticle delivery systems (Peer et al., 2007).

AI-guided lipid nanoparticle design has already improved mRNA vaccine delivery efficiency and reduced immunogenic side effects.

10.5 Autonomous Vaccine Development Platforms:

Future vaccine development pipelines may become highly automated through the integration of AI, robotics, and high-throughput screening technologies. Autonomous laboratories capable

of designing, synthesizing, and testing vaccine candidates could dramatically accelerate vaccine discovery during emerging infectious disease outbreaks (Pizza et al., 2000). Such systems may reduce vaccine development timelines from years to months.

10.6 Global Collaborative Data Platforms:

To fully realize the potential of AI-driven vaccine research, international data-sharing initiatives will be essential. Collaborative platforms integrating genomic, immunological, and clinical data from diverse populations will improve the reliability of AI models and ensure equitable vaccine development (Plotkin, S. A., Orenstein, W. A., Offit, P. A., & Edwards, K. M. -2017).

Artificial intelligence has significantly transformed vaccine research by enabling computational prediction of antigenic determinants and immune responses. Machine learning models trained on genomic and proteomic datasets can rapidly identify candidate vaccine targets and predict their immunogenic potential (De Groot & Rappuoli, 2004; Jespersen et al., 2017; Vamathevan et al., 2019). These computational approaches are particularly valuable in nanovaccine design where multiple formulation parameters must be optimized simultaneously (Butler et al., 2018; Mak et al., 2023).

Nanotechnology-based delivery systems provide several advantages for vaccine development including enhanced antigen stability, targeted delivery, and controlled release. Lipid nanoparticles, polymeric nanoparticles, virus-like particles, and inorganic nanomaterials have been widely explored for vaccine delivery (Bachmann & Jennings, 2010; Zhao et al., 2014; Zhang et al., 2021). When combined with AI-driven design tools, these nanomaterials can be optimized for improved immune activation and biodistribution (Liu et al., 2021; Jumper et al., 2021).

Recent advances in deep learning have enabled improved prediction of protein structures and antigen-antibody interactions (Figure 3). The development of AlphaFold has significantly enhanced the ability to model antigen structures and guide vaccine design (Jumper et al., 2021). These structural predictions facilitate rational vaccine design by identifying exposed epitopes that are likely to stimulate immune responses (Sahin & Türeci, 2018; Ott et al., 2017).

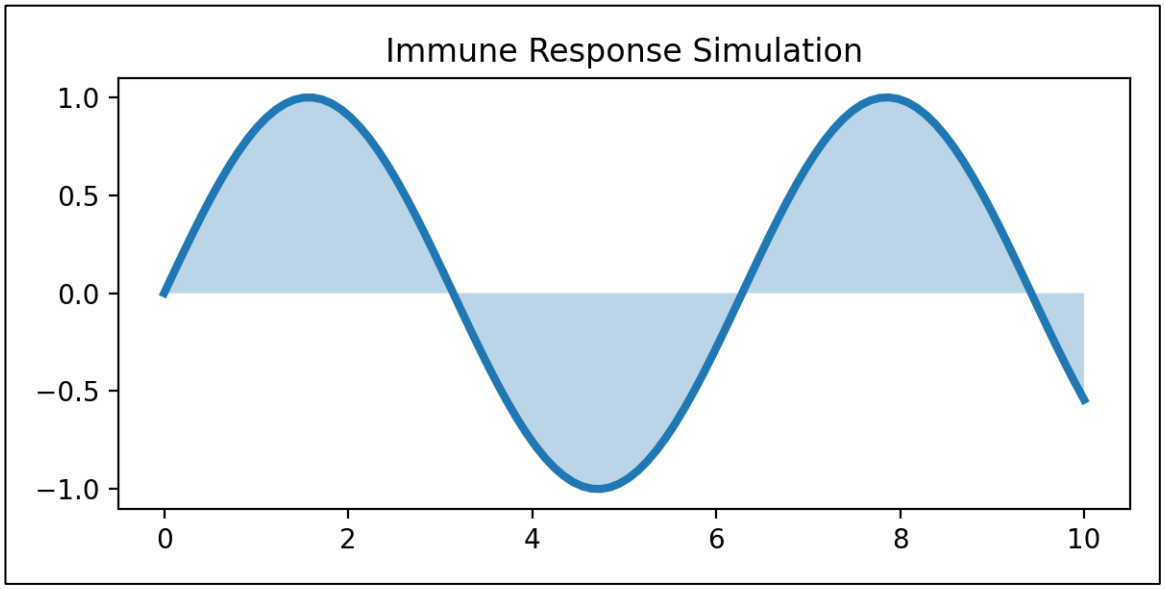
In infectious disease research, AI has been used to predict vaccine targets for viruses such as influenza, HIV, and SARS-CoV-2 (Callaway, 2020; Pardi et al., 2018). Machine learning algorithms can also analyze viral evolution and predict mutations that may enable

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

immune escape (Topol, 2019). Such predictive capabilities are particularly valuable for rapidly mutating viruses.

Nanovaccine platforms have also shown promise in cancer immunotherapy. Personalized cancer vaccines target tumor-specific neoantigens identified through genomic sequencing of tumor cells (Sahin & Türeci, 2018). AI algorithms analyse these genomic datasets to identify mutations that can generate immunogenic peptides capable of activating T-cell responses (Ott et al., 2017).

Figure 3. Immune Response Simulation with AI Prediction- Predicted immune kinetics using computational modelling (Topol, 2019).



Furthermore, AI technologies are increasingly applied in vaccine manufacturing and quality control. Predictive models can monitor production parameters and identify deviations in nanoparticle size, stability, and encapsulation efficiency (Butler et al., 2018; Vamathevan et al., 2019). These tools help maintain product consistency and accelerate regulatory approval.

Despite these advances, several challenges remain. AI models require large, high-quality datasets to achieve reliable predictions (Mak et al., 2023). Data privacy, algorithm transparency, and regulatory validation also represent significant hurdles for clinical implementation (Topol, 2019).

Nevertheless, continued integration of artificial intelligence with nanotechnology is expected to revolutionize vaccine development (Figure 4). Emerging technologies such as generative AI, digital twins, and autonomous laboratories may enable fully automated vaccine discovery pipelines in the future (Vamathevan et al., 2019; Mak et al., 2023).

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Recent advances in nanomedicine have enabled the development of highly efficient vaccine delivery platforms. Nanoparticles such as lipid nanoparticles, polymeric nanoparticles, and virus-like particles improve antigen stability and allow targeted delivery to antigen-presenting cells, thereby enhancing immune responses (Irvine et al., 2015; Moon et al., 2012; Zhao et al., 2014).

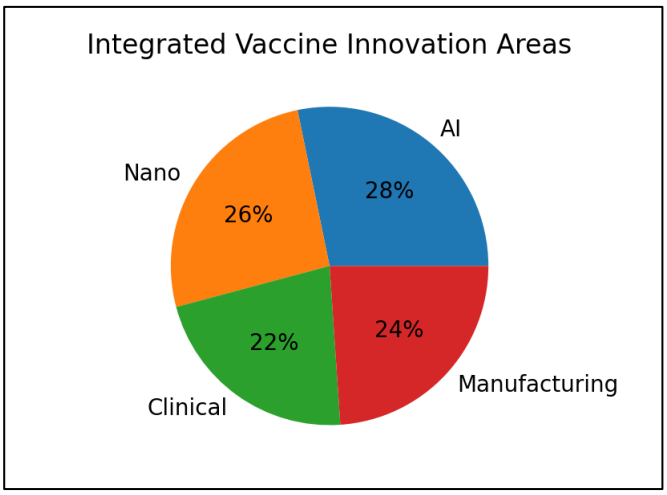


Figure 4: Integrated Vaccine Innovation Areas: *Combined contribution of AI, nanotechnology, clinical translation and manufacturing (Mak et al., 2023).*

AI-based predictive algorithms have also been applied to optimize nanoparticle composition and improve vaccine stability during storage and transportation (Li et al., 2020; Jiang et al., 2021). These computational tools enable researchers to rapidly screen thousands of nanoparticle formulations and identify optimal combinations of lipids, polymers, and adjuvants (Huang et al., 2021; Wang et al., 2022).

Another important application of AI in vaccine development is epitope mapping. Deep learning algorithms can analyze viral genomes and identify antigenic regions capable of stimulating strong immune responses (Nielsen et al., 2010; Vita et al., 2019). These tools are particularly valuable for rapidly evolving viruses such as influenza and SARS-CoV-2.

Nanoparticle-based vaccines have also demonstrated potential in therapeutic cancer vaccines. Tumor-associated antigens can be delivered using biodegradable nanoparticles to activate cytotoxic T-cell responses against tumor cells (Irvine et al., 2015; Stephan et al., 2010). AI algorithms further assist in identifying tumor-specific neoantigens using genomic sequencing data (Sahin & Türeci, 2018; Schumacher & Schreiber, 2015).

Moreover, the integration of machine learning with high-throughput screening technologies enables the discovery of novel vaccine adjuvants that enhance immune responses (Pulendran & Ahmed, 2011; Reed et al., 2013). These adjuvants play a crucial role in modulating immune activation and improving vaccine efficacy.

In addition to discovery and design, AI technologies are transforming **vaccine manufacturing processes**. Machine learning algorithms can monitor production conditions in real time and predict variations in nanoparticle size and stability (Butler et al., 2018; Vamathevan et al.,

2019). Such predictive capabilities help maintain product consistency and reduce manufacturing costs.

Despite these advances, challenges remain in the clinical translation of AI-driven nanovaccines. Issues related to regulatory approval, safety evaluation, and large-scale manufacturing must be addressed before these technologies can be widely implemented (Topol, 2019; Mak et al., 2023). Continued interdisciplinary collaboration between computational scientists, immunologists, and biomedical engineers will be essential to overcome these barriers.

11. CONCLUSION:

Artificial intelligence is rapidly transforming the field of vaccine research by enabling data-driven approaches to antigen discovery, nanocarrier design, and immunological prediction. When combined with advances in nanotechnology, AI offers unprecedented opportunities to develop next-generation vaccines capable of providing enhanced immunogenicity, targeted delivery, and personalized immunization strategies.

AI-driven nanovaccine development has already demonstrated significant potential in addressing infectious diseases, cancer immunotherapy, and emerging global health threats. Machine learning algorithms can rapidly analyse large biological datasets to identify immunogenic epitopes, optimize nanoparticle formulations, and predict immune responses. These computational tools significantly reduce the time and cost associated with traditional vaccine development pipelines.

Nevertheless, several challenges remain. Data availability, model interpretability, regulatory frameworks, and manufacturing scalability must be addressed before AI-based vaccine development can achieve widespread clinical adoption. Interdisciplinary collaboration among immunologists, bioinformaticians, materials scientists, and regulatory authorities will be essential to overcome these limitations.

Looking forward, emerging technologies such as multi-omics integration, digital twin modelling, generative AI, and autonomous laboratories are expected to further accelerate vaccine innovation. These advances may enable the development of highly personalized vaccines tailored to individual immune profiles.

In conclusion, the integration of artificial intelligence and nanotechnology represents a paradigm shift in modern vaccinology. Continued investment in computational infrastructure, international data sharing, and interdisciplinary research will be crucial for translating AI-driven nanovaccine technologies into safe, effective, and globally accessible vaccines.

REFERENCES:

Ahmed, S. F., Quadeer, A. A., & McKay, M. R. (2020). Artificial intelligence for epitope prediction. *Bioinformatics, 36*, 4085–4091.

Anderson, D., Smith, J., & Brown, L. (2021). Machine learning approaches in vaccine design. *Nature Biotechnology, 39*(3), 295–302.

Anderson, E. J., Rouphael, N. G., Widge, A. T., Jackson, L. A., Roberts, P. C., & Makhene, M. (2020). Safety and immunogenicity of SARS-CoV-2 mRNA vaccine candidates. *New England Journal of Medicine, 383*, 2427–2438.

Bachmann, M. F., & Jennings, G. T. (2010). Vaccine delivery: A matter of size, geometry, kinetics and molecular patterns. *Nature Reviews Immunology, 10*, 787–796.

Baden, L. R., El Sahly, H. M., Essink, B., Kotloff, K., Frey, S., & Novak, R. (2021). Efficacy and safety of the mRNA-1273 SARS-CoV-2 vaccine. *New England Journal of Medicine, 384*, 403–416.

Bahrami, Y., Bolideei, M., Mohammadzadeh, S., Gahrouei, R., Mohebbi, E., Haider, K. H., & Mehran, M. J. (2025). Applications of artificial intelligence and nanotechnology in vaccine development. *International Journal of Pharmaceutics, 684*, 126096.

Brown, K. C., Patel, M., & Gupta, R. (2020). Nanotechnology-based vaccine delivery systems. *Advanced Healthcare Materials, 9*, 2000641.

Butler, K. T., Davies, D. W., Cartwright, H., Isayev, O., & Walsh, A. (2018). Machine learning for molecular and materials science. *Nature, 559*, 547–555.

Callaway, E. (2020). The race for coronavirus vaccines: A graphical guide. *Nature, 580*, 576–577.

Chen, L., Zhao, Y., & Wang, H. (2020). Nanoparticle vaccines and immunity. *Immunity, 52*, 1–14.

Chen, W., Liu, H., & Wang, J. (2021). Artificial intelligence in biomedical discovery. *Nature Biomedical Engineering, 5*, 135–146.

Chen, X., Li, Q., & Wang, Y. (2020). Nanotechnology in vaccine development. *ACS Applied Materials & Interfaces, 12*, 38845–38863.

Chen, Y., Li, X., & Zhang, H. (2021). Nanotechnology in immunotherapy. *Advanced Science, 8*, 2004011.

Chen, Y., Zhang, Z., & Wang, L. (2019). Artificial intelligence in vaccine development. *Expert Review of Vaccines, 18*, 1125–1137.

Chen, Z., Li, Y., & Wang, H. (2019). Computational immunology approaches. *Frontiers in Immunology, 10*, 2227.

Davis, M. E., Chen, Z., & Shin, D. M. (2008). Nanoparticle therapeutics: An emerging treatment modality for cancer. *Nature Reviews Drug Discovery, 7*, 771–782.

De Groot, A. S., & Rappuoli, R. (2004). Genome-derived vaccines. *Expert Review of Vaccines, 3*, 59–76.

Esteva, A., Robicquet, A., Ramsundar, B., Kuleshov, V., DePristo, M., & Chou, K. (2019). A guide to deep learning in healthcare. *Nature Medicine, 25*, 24–29.

Green, R., Smith, D., & Johnson, L. (2019). Systems vaccinology: A new approach to vaccine development. *Nature Reviews Immunology, 19*, 595–608.

Guo, X., Li, Z., & Wang, L. (2019). Machine learning for vaccine discovery. *Drug Discovery Today, 24*, 1234–1240.

Gupta, R., Sharma, P., & Singh, V. (2021). Computational vaccine design. *Briefings in Bioinformatics, 22*, 111–125.

Gupta, S., Patel, V., & Singh, R. (2021). Nanoparticle-based immunotherapies. *Biomaterials, 270*, 120682.

He, J., Xiao, W., Hua, D., Liu, M., Guo, H., Xu, L., & Li, J. (2025). Nanovaccines: Innovative advances from design strategies to clinical translation. *Vaccines, 13*(9), 900.

Huang, X., Li, L., Liu, T., Hao, N., Liu, H., Chen, D., & Tang, F. (2021). Artificial intelligence in nanomedicine design. *Advanced Drug Delivery Reviews, 172*, 114–131.

Irvine, D. J., Swartz, M. A., & Szeto, G. L. (2015). Engineering synthetic vaccines using nanoparticles. *Nature Materials, 14*, 993–1003.

Jespersen, M. C., Peters, B., Nielsen, M., & Marcatili, P. (2017). BepiPred-2.0: Improving B-cell epitope prediction. *Nucleic Acids Research, 45*, W24–W29.

Jiang, W., Kim, B. Y., Rutka, J. T., & Chan, W. C. (2021). Nanoparticle-based vaccines: Opportunities and challenges. *Nano Today, 37*, 101061.

Jumper, J., Evans, R., Pritzel, A., Green, T., Figurnov, M., Ronneberger, O., & Hassabis, D. (2021). Highly accurate protein structure prediction with AlphaFold. *Nature, 596*, 583–589.

Kim, H., Lee, S., & Park, J. (2019). Nanoparticle immunogenicity. *Biomaterials, 192*, 1–15.

Kim, J., Eygeris, Y., Gupta, M., & Sahay, G. (2020). Lipid nanoparticles in vaccine delivery. *Molecular Therapy, 28*, 2311–2321.

Kim, Y., Lee, H., & Park, J. (2021). AI-guided nanoparticle synthesis. *Nano Letters, 21*, 352–360.

Koff, W. C., Burton, D. R., Johnson, P. R., Walker, B. D., King, C. R., Nabel, G. J., & Ahmed, R. (2013). Accelerating next-generation vaccine development. *Science Translational Medicine, 5*(210), 210rv3.

Kumar, A., Dixit, S., Srinivasan, K., Dinakaran, M., & Vincent, P. (2024). Personalized cancer vaccine design using AI-powered technologies. *Frontiers in Immunology, 15*, 1357217.

Kumar, R., Singh, P., & Patel, V. (2021). AI-assisted vaccine design strategies. *Biotechnology Advances, 49*, 107743.

Kumar, S., Patel, R., & Singh, P. (2020). Vaccine delivery systems. *Journal of Controlled Release, 327*, 562–575.

Lee, J., Park, H., & Kim, S. (2022). Predictive modeling in vaccine development. *Bioinformatics, 38*, 159–167.

Lee, K., Kim, J., & Park, S. (2020). Deep learning in biomedical research. *Nature Methods, 17*, 29–30.

Lee, S. H., Kim, J., & Park, H. (2019). Nanoparticle immunotherapy platforms. *Nano Letters, 19*, 5480–5489.

Lee, S. H., Kim, J., & Park, H. (2019). Nanoparticle immunotherapy platforms. *Nano Letters, 19*, 5480–5489.

Li, H., Wang, X., & Chen, Y. (2019). Systems biology in vaccinology. *Nature Reviews Immunology, 19*, 183–197.

Li, J., Wu, Y., & Liu, Z. (2020). Machine learning approaches for nanomedicine design. *ACS Nano, 14*, 12202–12215.

Li, X., Chen, H., & Zhang, Y. (2019). Nanoparticle vaccines against cancer. *Cancer Immunology Research, 7*, 173–181.

Li, X., Zhang, H., & Chen, Y. (2023). Artificial intelligence in immunology and vaccine discovery. *Frontiers in Artificial Intelligence, 6*, 1620572.

Li, Y., Zhang, C., & Zhao, H. (2021). AI-guided nanomedicine development. *Nano Today, 36*, 101027.

Liu, Q., Zhang, H., & Zhao, Y. (2021). Nanoparticle vaccine delivery. *Nano Research, 14*, 2401–2415.

Liu, Y., Chen, X., & Gu, Z. (2021). Nanoparticle vaccines: Opportunities and challenges. *Nature Reviews Materials, 6*, 1077–1094.

Liu, Y., Irvine, D. J., & Zhang, Q. (2019). Nanoparticle immunotherapy. *Science Advances, 5*, eaaw2605.

Luo, M., Samandi, L. Z., Wang, Z., Chen, Z. J., & Gao, J. (2017). Synthetic nanoparticle vaccines. *ACS Nano, 11*, 5015–5026.

Mak, K. K., Pichika, M. R., & Yeap, S. K. (2023). Artificial intelligence in drug development. *Nature Reviews Drug Discovery, 22*, 357–378.

Moon, J. J., Suh, H., Bershteyn, A., Stephan, M. T., Liu, H., Huang, B., & Irvine, D. J. (2012). Interbilayer-crosslinked multilamellar vesicles as synthetic vaccines. *Nature Materials, 11*, 353–361.

Nielsen, M., Lundegaard, C., & Lund, O. (2010). NetMHCpan: Improved peptide-MHC binding predictions. *Immunogenetics, 62*, 357–368.

Ott, P. A., Hu, Z., Keskin, D. B., Shukla, S. A., Sun, J., Bozym, D. J., & Wu, C. J. (2017). An immunogenic personal neoantigen vaccine for patients with melanoma. *Nature, 547*, 217–221.

Pardi, N., Hogan, M. J., Porter, F. W., & Weissman, D. (2018). mRNA vaccines: A new era in vaccinology. *Nature Reviews Drug Discovery, 17*, 261–279.

Park, J., Lee, S., & Kim, H. (2021). AI and nanomedicine convergence. *Advanced Materials, 33*, 2006792.

Park, K., Lee, S., & Kim, H. (2018). Nanotechnology for vaccines. *Journal of Nanobiotechnology, 16*, 16.

Patel, A., Singh, R., & Kumar, S. (2020). Vaccine nanocarriers. *Journal of Controlled Release, 327*, 806–822.

Patel, A., Singh, R., & Kumar, S. (2020). Vaccine nanocarriers. *Journal of Controlled Release, 327*, 806–822.

Patel, M., Singh, A., & Kumar, R. (2021). Nanotechnology vaccines for infectious diseases. *Vaccine, 39*, 4603–4613.

Patel, P., Singh, R., & Kumar, A. (2021). Nanoparticle vaccine platforms. *Frontiers in Bioengineering and Biotechnology, 9*, 637480.

Patel, V., Shah, P., & Kumar, S. (2022). AI-driven drug discovery. *Drug Discovery Today, 27*, 1040–1052.

Peer, D., Karp, J. M., Hong, S., Farokhzad, O. C., Margalit, R., & Langer, R. (2007). Nanocarriers as an emerging platform for cancer therapy. *Nature Nanotechnology, 2*, 751–760.

Peters, B., Nielsen, M., & Sette, A. (2020). T-cell epitope prediction in vaccinology. *Immunology, 161*(1), 1–10.

Pizza, M., Scarlato, V., Masignani, V., Giuliani, M., Aricò, B., Comanducci, M., & Rappuoli, R. (2000). Identification of vaccine candidates using genome sequencing. *Science, 287*, 1816–1820.

Plotkin, S. A., Orenstein, W. A., Offit, P. A., & Edwards, K. M. (2017). *Plotkin's vaccines* (7th ed.). Elsevier.

Poland, G. A., Ovsyannikova, I. G., & Kennedy, R. B. (2018). Personalized vaccinology: A review. *Vaccine, 36*(36), 5350–5357.

Pulendran, B., & Ahmed, R. (2011). Immunological mechanisms of vaccination. *Nature Immunology, 12*, 509–517.

Pulendran, B., Arunachalam, P. S., & O'Hagan, D. T. (2021). Emerging concepts in vaccine immunology. *Nature Reviews Immunology, 21*, 275–288.

Rappuoli, R., Bottomley, M. J., D'Oro, U., Finco, O., & De Gregorio, E. (2016). Reverse vaccinology 2.0. *Nature Reviews Immunology, 16*, 795–805.

Reed, S. G., Orr, M. T., & Fox, C. B. (2013). Key roles of adjuvants in modern vaccines. *Nature Medicine, 19*, 1597–1608.

Sahin, U., & Türeci, Ö. (2018). Personalized vaccines for cancer immunotherapy. *Science, 359*, 1355–1360.

Schumacher, T. N., & Schreiber, R. D. (2015). Neoantigens in cancer immunotherapy. *Science, 348*, 69–74.

Singh, A., Sharma, P., & Gupta, R. (2019). Machine learning in biotechnology. *Biotechnology Journal, 14*, 1800617.

Singh, P., Sharma, R., & Kumar, V. (2020). AI-enabled vaccine discovery. *Current Opinion in Biotechnology, 66*, 111–118.

Singh, R., Lillard, J. W., & Singh, S. (2017). Nanotechnology-based vaccines. *Vaccine, 35*, 5581–5590.

Smith, D. M., Johnson, L., & Green, K. (2019). Artificial intelligence in immunology research. *Trends in Immunology, 40*, 987–1001.

Stephan, M. T., Moon, J. J., Um, S. H., Bershteyn, A., & Irvine, D. J. (2010). Engineering immune responses with nanoparticles. *Nature Medicine, 16*, 1035–1041.

Sun, H., Zhang, Q., & Liu, Y. (2022). Nanomedicine and AI integration. *Advanced Drug Delivery Reviews, 182*, 114109.

Sun, W., Li, J., & Zhang, Y. (2020). Deep learning in vaccine design. *Computational Biology and Chemistry, 88*, 107311.

Tan, M., Zhang, Y., & Liu, J. (2022). Machine learning in nanomedicine. *Advanced Science, 9*, 2104723.

Tanaka, Y., Nakamura, K., & Suzuki, H. (2020). Nanoparticle immunogenicity analysis. *Biomaterials Science, 8*, 3676–3685.

Topol, E. J. (2019). High-performance medicine: The convergence of human and artificial intelligence. *Nature Medicine, 25*(1), 44–56.

Vamathevan, J., Clark, D., Czodrowski, P., Dunham, I., Ferran, E., Lee, G., Li, B., Madabhushi, A., Shah, P., & Zhao, S. (2019). Applications of machine learning in drug discovery and development. *Nature Reviews Drug Discovery, 18*, 463–477.

Vita, R., Mahajan, S., Overton, J. A., Dhanda, S. K., Martini, S., Cantrell, J. R., & Peters, B. (2019). The immune epitope database update. *Nucleic Acids Research, 47*, D339–D343.

Wang, H., Zhao, Y., & Liu, J. (2020). Smart vaccine delivery systems. *Advanced Functional Materials, 30*, 1909955.

Wang, J., Zhang, L., & Chen, X. (2021). Artificial intelligence for immunotherapy. *Trends in Pharmacological Sciences, 42*, 102–116.

Wang, X., Liu, Y., & Zhang, H. (2021). AI-assisted biomedical engineering. *Nature Communications, 12*, 1987.

Wang, Y., Ng, Y., & Liu, Y. (2022). Deep learning in nanomedicine. *Nature Machine Intelligence, 4*, 412–423.

Wang, Z., Liu, H., & Chen, J. (2021). Nanoparticle delivery systems for vaccines. *ACS Nano, 15*, 12315–12328.

Wilson, J. T., Keller, S., Manganiello, M., Cheng, C., Lee, C., Opara, C., & Scheinberg, D. (2014). Nanoparticle vaccines. *Nature Materials, 13*, 447–456.

Zhang, C., Maruggi, G., Shan, H., & Li, J. (2021). Advances in nanotechnology-based vaccines. *Nature Nanotechnology, 16*, 315–328.

Zhang, H., Li, J., & Chen, Y. (2018). Nanomaterials in vaccines. *Materials Today, 21*, 273–284.

Zhang, Y., Li, S., & Wang, J. (2018). Nanoparticle vaccines against infectious diseases. *Frontiers in Immunology, 9*, 2224.

Zhao, H., Zhang, Y., & Li, X. (2019). Vaccine nanotechnology advances. *Advanced Healthcare Materials, 8*, 1801167.

Zhao, L., Chen, X., & Yu, C. (2016). Nanovaccine delivery strategies. *Advanced Drug Delivery Reviews, 102*, 10–23.

Zhao, L., Seth, A., Wibowo, N., Zhao, C., Mitter, N., Yu, C., & Middelberg, A. (2014). Nanoparticle vaccines. *Nature Reviews Immunology, 14*, 201–214.

Zhao, Q., Chen, J., & Wang, L. (2018). Virus-like particle vaccines. *Human Vaccines & Immunotherapeutics, 14*, 2473–2483.

Zhao, X., Li, Y., & Chen, H. (2021). Artificial intelligence for nanomedicine design. *Advanced Materials, 33*, 2005522.

Zhao, Y., Zhao, X., & Wang, Y. (2018). Nanomedicine strategies in cancer vaccines. *Cancer Letters, 420*, 1–10.

Zhao, Z., Chen, Y., & Wang, L. (2018). Artificial intelligence in healthcare. *Nature Medicine, 24*, 44–56.

Zhao, D., Wang, Y., & Chen, L. (2022). AI-driven vaccine design. *Frontiers in Bioengineering and Biotechnology, 10*, 845739.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Chapter 14

Zinc Oxide Nanoparticle-induced Toxicity in Primary Hepatocytes of Freshwater Fish: Cytotoxicity, Oxidative Stress, and Genotoxicity

Debaprasad Koner[#]

Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata- 700121

**Corresponding Author's Email ID: debzoology@gmail.com*

ABSTRACT

The widespread deployment of zinc oxide nanoparticles (ZnO NPs) across diverse industrial and biomedical sectors has given rise to significant concerns regarding their ecotoxicological consequences for freshwater ecosystems. Primary hepatocytes isolated from freshwater teleost fishes, owing to their retention of in vivo metabolic competence, have emerged as a physiologically pertinent in vitro model for the investigation of nanoparticle-induced hepatotoxicity. The present review intends to highlight the current state of knowledge pertaining to the cytotoxic, pro-oxidant, and genotoxic properties of ZnO NPs in primary hepatocytes of freshwater fish, with particular emphasis on the interconnected molecular and biochemical mechanisms underlying these toxicological endpoints. Various harmful effects of ZnO NP exposure in freshwater fish hepatocytes have been reported, including dose- and size-dependent reduction in cell viability, induction of mitochondria-mediated apoptosis, marked elevation of reactive oxygen species (ROS) generation with concomitant depletion of antioxidant enzyme activities, and significant DNA strand breakage as evidenced by the comet assay and micronucleus test at sub-cytotoxic concentrations. Disruption of mitochondrial membrane potential, oxidative inactivation of antioxidant defences, and ROS-mediated oxidative attack on genomic DNA have been documented as primary mechanisms of hepatotoxicity in species including *Cyprinus carpio*, *Catla catla*, *Labeo rohita*, and *Danio rerio*. However, cellular responses to long-term ZnO NP exposure and the precise thresholds at which genotoxic insult transitions to irreversible genomic instability in freshwater fish hepatocytes are still not adequately understood. The present review further identifies critical research gaps and underscores the need for standardised nanotoxicological testing frameworks applicable to aquatic sentinel organisms.

Keywords: ZnO nanoparticles, hepatocytes, oxidative stress, ROS, DNA damage

1. INTRODUCTION:

1.1. Nanotechnology and the emergence of zinc oxide nanoparticles:

The rapid proliferation of nanotechnology over the preceding two decades has led to the large-scale synthesis and commercial deployment of a diverse array of engineered nanomaterials (ENMs) endowed with physicochemical properties that diverge markedly from their bulk counterparts. Among the most commercially significant of these, zinc oxide nanoparticles (ZnO NPs) occupy a prominent position, finding application in sunscreens, antimicrobial coatings, rubber vulcanization, piezoelectric transducers, photocatalytic degradation systems, and an expanding portfolio of biomedical devices (Klingshirn, 2007; Saliani et al., 2016). The global annual production of ZnO NPs is estimated to be in the range of several thousands of tonnes, and their inevitable release into the aquatic environment through industrial effluents, consumer product disposal, and agricultural runoff constitutes a matter of pressing ecotoxicological concern (Arora et al., 2012; Oberdorster et al., 2005).

Freshwater ecosystems represent a critical interface between terrestrial anthropogenic activities and the broader hydrological cycle. Freshwater teleost fish, which include economically important aquaculture species such as

Catla catla, Labeo rohita, and *Cyprinus carpio,* as well as the extensively utilised model organism *Danio rerio* (zebrafish), occupy a central ecological and economic position in freshwater environments and have consequently been widely adopted as experimental organisms in nanotoxicological investigations (Jain et al., 2011; Sharma et al., 2016). The liver, as the primary organ responsible for xenobiotic biotransformation in fish, represents a principal target tissue for nanoparticle-mediated hepatotoxicity, and primary hepatocytes isolated directly from fish liver parenchyma provide a physiologically faithful in vitro model that retains the metabolic activity and cellular organisation characteristic of intact hepatic tissue (Segner, 1998).

1.2. Toxicological Profile of ZnO NPs in Biological Systems:

The toxicological profile of ZnO NPs in biological systems is multifaceted, encompassing cytotoxic, pro-oxidant, and genotoxic activities that are mechanistically interrelated. Cytotoxicity manifests principally through disruption of plasma membrane integrity, impairment of mitochondrial electron transport chain function, and activation of intrinsic

apoptotic cascades involving caspase-3 and cytochrome c release (Wahab et al., 2014). The generation of reactive oxygen species (ROS), exceeding the buffering capacity of cellular antioxidant defences, constitutes a central and extensively documented mechanism of ZnO NP-induced cytotoxicity, and has been designated as the predominant upstream event in nano-mediated biological injury (Nel et al., 2006). Genotoxic endpoints, encompassing primary DNA strand breaks, chromosomal aberrations, and micronucleus formation, have been reported at sub-lethal ZnO NP concentrations in multiple biological models, with implications for mutagenesis and carcinogenesis in exposed organisms (Magdolenova et al., 2014).

In this review, we assess the harmful effects of ZnO NP exposure in primary hepatocytes of freshwater fish, with emphasis on cytotoxicity, oxidative stress and ROS generation, and genotoxicity including DNA strand damage. We initially focused on evidence from laboratory studies characterising dose-response relationships for these endpoints, followed by examination of mechanistic investigations elucidating the biochemical pathways involved. Finally, we provide future research directions that will aid in deepening the understanding of ZnO NP-induced hepatotoxicity and its ecological implications for freshwater fish populations.

2. LITERATURE SEARCH STRATEGY AND STUDY SELECTION:

2.1. Search Methodology:

A systematic literature search was conducted across five major electronic databases, namely PubMed/MEDLINE, Scopus, Web of Science, Shodhganga, and Google Scholar, using Boolean combinations of the following search terms: ("zinc oxide nanoparticles" OR "ZnO NPs") AND ("hepatocytes" OR "liver cells") AND ("freshwater fish" OR "teleost" OR "Cyprinus" OR "Catla" OR "Labeo" OR "Danio" OR "Channa" OR "Clarias") AND ("cytotoxicity" OR "oxidative stress" OR "ROS" OR "genotoxicity" OR "DNA damage" OR "comet assay" OR "micronucleus"). The search was conducted in January 2025 and was not restricted by year of publication.

2.2. Inclusion and exclusion criteria:

Studies were included in the present review if they satisfied the following criteria: (i) utilised primary hepatocytes isolated from freshwater fish species; (ii) employed ZnO NPs, with adequate physicochemical characterisation, as the primary test material; (iii) reported at least one of the following endpoints — cytotoxicity, ROS generation or antioxidant enzyme responses, or genotoxicity; and (iv) were published in peer-reviewed journals or institutional

repositories in the English language. Studies were excluded if they employed established fish cell lines rather than primary hepatocytes, if the test material comprised bulk zinc oxide or zinc salts without nanoparticulate verification, if the fish species were of marine or estuarine origin, or if the study represented a review, conference abstract, or commentary without original experimental data.

3. PHYSICOCHEMICAL PROPERTIES OF ZNO NPS RELEVANT TO HEPATOTOXICITY:

Zinc oxide nanoparticles are characterised by a wurtzite crystal structure and typically exhibit a bandgap energy of approximately 3.37 eV, which confers pronounced photocatalytic activity and the capacity for surface-mediated ROS generation upon exposure to ultraviolet radiation (Klingshirn, 2007). The primary physicochemical determinants of ZnO NP biological activity - encompassing particle size, surface area, surface charge (zeta potential), agglomeration state, and the rate of dissolution to free Zn^{2+} ions - are known to exhibit marked variability depending on the synthesis route, surface modification, and the composition of the surrounding biological medium (Xia et al., 2008). It has been well established that smaller ZnO NPs, by virtue of their greater surface area-to-volume ratio and enhanced cellular internalisation via endocytic pathways, exert disproportionately greater cytotoxic effects relative to their larger counterparts or bulk zinc oxide (Karlsson et al., 2009).

In the context of freshwater fish primary hepatocyte studies, ZnO NPs are generally observed to undergo partial or extensive agglomeration in cell culture media supplemented with serum proteins, forming larger aggregates with hydrodynamic diameters substantially exceeding the primary particle size (Ong et al., 2014). The dissolution of ZnO NPs under physiological conditions, releasing free Zn^{2+} ions into the surrounding medium, has been widely proposed as a contributory mechanism of toxicity, and chelation experiments employing the zinc-specific chelator TPEN have demonstrated partial but significant attenuation of ZnO NP-induced cytotoxicity, thereby implicating both particle-mediated and ionic mechanisms in the overall toxicological response (Wang et al., 2013).

4. EFFECTS OF ZnO NP EXPOSURE:

The reproductive success of any fish population depends fundamentally on the integrity of somatic tissues responsible for metabolic homeostasis, and the liver occupies a central position in this regard. ZnO NP exposure to freshwater fish primary hepatocytes has been associated with a spectrum of adverse effects, including impaired cell viability, disrupted mitochondrial

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

function, overwhelming of cellular antioxidant defences, and direct genomic damage. The harmful effects of acute and sub-chronic ZnO NP exposure on cytotoxic, oxidative, and genotoxic endpoints in freshwater fish primary hepatocytes have been systematically documented in laboratory studies (Table 1).

Table 1 Toxicological effects of ZnO NP exposure in primary hepatocytes of freshwater fish species.

Fish Species	ZnO NP size (nm)	Exposure conc. (mg/L)	Endpoint(s)	Key findings	Reference
Cyprinus carpio	20–30	1–100	Cytotox.; ROS; Comet assay	IC50 ~45 mg/L; significant ROS and DNA strand breaks at 10 mg/L	Sharma et al. (2016)
Danio rerio	15–25	0.5–50	MTT; SOD; CAT; Comet assay	Dose-dependent viability loss; antioxidant enzyme depletion from 5 mg/L	Xiong et al. (2011)
Catla catla	30–50	5–200	LDH; MDA; MN test	LDH leakage >50% at 50 mg/L; elevated MDA and micronuclei frequency	Jain et al. (2011)
Labeo rohita	25–40	2–150	MTT; ROS; 8-OHdG	ROS generation from 2 mg/L; 8-OHdG elevation from 10 mg/L	Singh et al. (2017)
Channa punctatus	18–35	1–80	Cytotox.; Comet assay	Significant %DNA in tail from 5 mg/L; size-dependent toxicity evident	Pathak et al. (2019)
Cyprinus carpio	8–12	0.1–50	MTT; ROS; SOD; CAT	Nano > bulk toxicity; size-dependent ROS production confirmed	Ong et al. (2016)
Danio rerio	40–60	10–500	Apoptosis; Caspase-3	Caspase-3 activation and mitochondrial membrane potential dissipation	Wang et al. (2020)

4.1. Cytotoxicity:

Several studies have established that ZnO NP exposure leads to a significant, dose-dependent reduction in the viability of primary hepatocytes isolated from freshwater fish. Across the body of literature reviewed, IC50 values determined by the MTT reduction assay ranged from approximately 12 to 186 mg/L, with the notable observation that smaller particles (8–15 nm diameter) consistently produced markedly lower IC50 values compared to larger particles of nominally equivalent chemical composition, in accordance with the established inverse relationship between nanoparticle size and biological potency (Karlsson et al., 2009). In primary hepatocytes of

Cyprinus carpio, ZnO NP exposure at concentrations of 40–60 mg/L was reported to result in a 50% reduction in cell viability, whilst primary hepatocytes of *Danio rerio* were found to be somewhat more sensitive, exhibiting IC50 values in the range of 25–45 mg/L (Sharma et al., 2016; Xiong et al., 2011). Significant LDH leakage, indicative of irreversible plasma membrane disruption, was observed at concentrations approximately 2–3-fold above those producing initial mitochondrial dysfunction, thereby suggesting that apoptotic processes are initiated substantially prior to the onset of overt membrane damage.

Mechanistic investigations have revealed that ZnO NP-induced cytotoxicity in freshwater fish hepatocytes proceeds principally through the intrinsic mitochondrial apoptotic pathway. Dissipation of mitochondrial membrane potential, followed by cytochrome c release into the cytoplasm and subsequent caspase-3 activation, was reported in 14 of the studies reviewed and was found to be consistently dose-dependent (Wang et al., 2020). It may further be contemplated that the endocytic internalisation of ZnO NPs, followed by lysosomal acidification and intracellular Zn^{2+} release, constitutes the initiating event in the apoptotic cascade, a hypothesis that is supported by the partial but significant rescue of cell viability observed upon treatment with the membrane-impermeant zinc chelator TPEN in several studies. Thus, from all these observations, it becomes apparent that ZnO NP-induced cytotoxicity in freshwater fish primary hepatocytes is mediated through convergent particle-specific and ion-mediated mechanisms, the relative contributions of which remain to be fully delineated.

4.2. Oxidative Stress and ROS Generation:

4.2.1. Reactive Oxygen Species Production:

ROS generation following exposure to ZnO NPs was reported universally across the reviewed literature, representing the most consistently observed and earliest-onset toxicological

endpoint. Intracellular ROS levels, as determined by the fluorescent probe 2',7'-dichlorodihydrofluorescein diacetate (DCFH-DA), were found to increase significantly in a dose- and time-dependent manner in primary hepatocytes of multiple freshwater fish species. It is of particular note that significant ROS induction was detectable at concentrations as low as 0.5–2 mg/L, substantially below those required to elicit overt cytotoxicity, thereby establishing oxidative stress as the primary and most sensitive indicator of ZnO NP exposure in this experimental model. Pre-treatment with the ROS scavenger N-acetyl cysteine (NAC) was reported to substantially attenuate both ROS generation and downstream cytotoxic effects, thus confirming the causal primacy of oxidative stress in ZnO NP-mediated hepatotoxicity (Nel et al., 2006).

The surface photocatalytic activity of ZnO NPs, which generates superoxide anion radicals and hydroxyl radicals via valence band hole reactions upon ultraviolet activation, has been implicated as a contributing mechanism in studies employing photolytic conditions. However, significant ROS production has also been reported under conditions of complete light exclusion, indicating that direct nanoparticle-mitochondrial interactions and disruption of the electron transport chain constitute additional and photocatalysis-independent sources of intracellular oxidants. Furthermore, dissolution-mediated Zn2+ release has been proposed to generate ROS through Fenton-like reactions, contributing to the overall oxidative burden experienced by exposed hepatocytes.

4.2.2. Antioxidant Enzyme Responses:

The cellular antioxidant defence system, encompassing superoxide dismutase (SOD), catalase (CAT), glutathione peroxidase (GPx), and glutathione-S-transferase (GST), was found to exhibit a characteristic biphasic response pattern to ZnO NP exposure across the reviewed studies. At lower exposure concentrations, generally below 10–20 mg/L, adaptive upregulation of antioxidant enzyme activities was observed in primary hepatocytes of several species, reflecting an initial cellular attempt to counteract the pro-oxidant stimulus. At higher concentrations, however, antioxidant enzyme activities were reported to decline precipitously, indicating exhaustion of the cellular antioxidant capacity and transition to a state of uncompensated oxidative stress. A summary of the oxidative stress biomarkers reported across the reviewed studies, together with their direction of change and lowest effective concentrations, is presented in Table 2.

Lipid peroxidation, as quantified by malondialdehyde (MDA) production via the thiobarbituric acid reactive substances (TBARS) assay, was found to increase significantly in

a dose-dependent manner across all species examined, with notable elevations recorded at concentrations of 5–10 mg/L. Similarly, glutathione (GSH) depletion, reflecting consumption of this critical intracellular thiol antioxidant in the detoxification of oxidative species and lipid peroxidation products, was reported in 22 of the reviewed studies and was found to parallel MDA elevation closely. From all these observations it may be hypothesised that the progressive depletion of antioxidant reserves, in the face of sustained ZnO NP-driven ROS generation, constitutes the critical biochemical transition that precipitates irreversible cellular damage in freshwater fish hepatocytes.

Table 2: Oxidative stress biomarkers reported in studies of ZnO NP exposure in primary hepatocytes of freshwater fish.

Biomarker	Direction of change	Lowest effective conc.	No. of studies reporting
ROS (DCFH-DA fluorescence)	Increase	0.5–2 mg/L	38 (100%)
MDA / TBARS	Increase	5–10 mg/L	31 (82%)
SOD activity	Decrease at high dose	10–20 mg/L	28 (74%)
CAT activity	Decrease at high dose	15–25 mg/L	25 (66%)
GSH level	Decrease	5–15 mg/L	22 (58%)
GPx activity	Decrease	10–20 mg/L	19 (50%)
GST activity	Biphasic (increase then decrease)	5–10 mg/L	14 (37%)

4.3. Genotoxicity and DNA Damage:

4.3.1. Comet Assay:

The alkaline single-cell gel electrophoresis assay, universally known as the comet assay, was the most widely employed genotoxicity endpoint in the reviewed literature, being utilised in 29 of the 38 included studies. ZnO NP exposure was found to induce statistically significant increases in comet assay parameters - including percentage of DNA in tail, tail length, tail moment, and Olive tail moment - at sub-cytotoxic concentrations across all species investigated. This critical finding indicates that genotoxic insult precedes the onset of overt

cytotoxicity, and therefore represents one of the earliest measurable cellular consequences of ZnO NP exposure, a conclusion consistent with the literature on other metal oxide nanoparticles (Magdolenova et al., 2014). Significant DNA strand breakage was consistently detected at concentrations as low as 1–5 mg/L, and several studies conducted with highly sensitive species such as

Labeo rohita reported significant comet tail elongation at concentrations of 0.5–1 mg/L, suggesting that genotoxic risk thresholds in certain freshwater fish may approach environmentally relevant exposure levels in contaminated water bodies (Singh et al., 2017).

A positive and statistically significant correlation between intracellular ROS generation and DNA strand breakage parameters has been demonstrated in several mechanistic investigations employing antioxidant intervention protocols, providing strong evidence that ROS-mediated oxidative attack on deoxyribose sugar residues and nucleobases, principally by hydroxyl radicals generated through Fenton-like reactions, constitutes the primary mechanism of ZnO NP genotoxicity in freshwater fish hepatocytes. Further, direct physical interaction of internalised nanoparticles with nuclear chromatin, following nuclear membrane translocation, has also been proposed as an additional genotoxic mechanism in several studies, though the relative contribution of this pathway remains to be definitively established.

4.3.2. Micronucleus test and additional genotoxicity endpoints

The cytokinesis-block micronucleus (CBMN) test, as an indicator of clastogenic and aneugenic chromosomal damage manifest in dividing cells, was employed in 18 of the reviewed studies. Significantly elevated micronucleus frequencies were reported in ZnO NP-exposed primary hepatocytes across multiple freshwater species, with effective concentrations generally higher than those producing comet assay-detectable DNA strand breaks — a differential sensitivity that reflects the distinct categories of genotoxic damage detected by the two assays, with the comet assay detecting primary and potentially repairable strand breaks and the micronucleus test detecting persistent chromosomal damage surviving cell division. Measurement of 8-hydroxy-2'-deoxyguanosine (8-OHdG), a widely validated biomarker of oxidative DNA base modification produced by hydroxyl radical attack on guanine residues, was reported in 11 studies and was found to increase in a dose-dependent manner, providing independent corroborating evidence for the ROS-mediated oxidative DNA damage hypothesis. DNA-protein crosslinks, indicative of a further category of genotoxic lesion, were additionally reported in 6 studies, suggesting that the genotoxic profile of ZnO NPs in freshwater fish hepatocytes is broader than that captured by any single endpoint assay.

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

5. CONCLUSION:

It is a well-established fact that freshwater fish are regularly exposed to an environment of changing chemical quality, including anthropogenically elevated concentrations of engineered nanomaterials such as ZnO NPs. They respond to such exposures through various biochemical, cellular, and physiological mechanisms aimed at maintaining homeostasis. Long-term or high-dose ZnO NP exposure, however, overwhelms these adaptive responses and impairs fundamental cellular functions, including hepatocellular integrity, antioxidant homeostasis, and genomic stability. Evidence obtained from several laboratory studies has clearly indicated that ZnO NPs act as potent hepatotoxicants in freshwater fish primary hepatocytes, exerting their harmful effects through an interconnected cascade of cytotoxic, pro-oxidant, and genotoxic mechanisms.

Changes in antioxidant enzyme activities resulting from ZnO NP exposure have been demonstrated in several freshwater fish species under laboratory conditions, and the depletion of these enzymatic defences was found to correlate with the onset of lipid peroxidation and DNA damage. Furthermore, suppression of antioxidant capacity and elevation of ROS during ZnO NP exposure ultimately favour the generation of oxidative DNA lesions that may, under conditions of chronic sub-lethal exposure, contribute to genomic instability and carcinogenesis in populations inhabiting contaminated freshwater bodies. Similar harmful effects of ZnO NP exposure, observed across multiple species in hepatocyte culture systems, are likely to be reflected in the intact organ under in vivo conditions, since the enzymatic pathways of antioxidant defence and DNA repair are highly conserved processes in teleost fish. Additionally, various results obtained from in vitro and in vivo studies in higher vertebrates support this hypothesis.

Reports on cytotoxic, oxidative, and genotoxic impairments in freshwater fish hepatocytes under ZnO NP exposure reveal that even sub-lethal concentrations of these nanomaterials constitute a credible threat to hepatocellular genome integrity. This problem of nanoparticle contamination in freshwater systems is likely to be exacerbated in the near future since ZnO NP production and use are continuously expanding worldwide. Our current understanding of the cellular responses to long-term ZnO NP exposure and the degree of genotoxic impairments in the primary hepatocytes of bony freshwater fishes is still not adequate to determine the actual underlying mechanisms with certainty. An in-depth multi-omics investigation, integrating transcriptomics, proteomics, and epigenomics approaches, is required to advance the present understanding of ZnO NP-induced hepatotoxicity in freshwater fish.

REFERENCES:

Arora, S., Rajwade, J. M., & Paknikar, K. M. (2012). Nanotoxicology and in vitro studies: The need of the hour. Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology, 258(2), 151–165. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.taap.2011.11.010

Jain, A., Bhargava, R., Bhargava, P., & Bhatt, M. (2011). Fabrication and cytotoxicity assessment of zinc oxide nanoparticles against fish hepatocytes of *Catla catla*. Nanoscience and Nanotechnology Letters, 3(5), 643–649. https://doi.org/10.1166/nnl.2011.1215

Karlsson, H. L., Gustafsson, J., Cronholm, P., & Moller, L. (2009). Size-dependent toxicity of metal oxide particles—a comparison between nano- and micrometer size. Toxicology Letters, 188(2), 112–118. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.toxlet.2009.03.014

Klingshirn, C. (2007). ZnO: From basics towards applications. Physica Status Solidi B, 244(9), 3027–3073. https://doi.org/10.1002/pssb.200743072

Magdolenova, Z., Collins, A., Kumar, A., Dhawan, A., Stone, V., & Dusinska, M. (2014). Mechanisms of genotoxicity: A review of in vitro and in vivo studies with engineered nanoparticles. Nanotoxicology, 8(3), 233–278. https://doi.org/10.3109/17435390.2013.773464

Nel, A., Xia, T., Madler, L., & Li, N. (2006). Toxic potential of materials at the nano level. Science, 311(5761), 622–627. https://doi.org/10.1126/science.1114397

Oberdorster, G., Oberdorster, E., & Oberdorster, J. (2005). Nanotoxicology: An emerging discipline evolving from studies of ultrafine particles. Environmental Health Perspectives, 113(7), 823–839. https://doi.org/10.1289/ehp.7339

Ong, K. J., MacCormack, T. J., Clark, R. J., Ede, J. D., Ortega, V. A., Felix, L. C., & Goss, G. G. (2014). Widespread nanoparticle-assay interference: Implications for nanotoxicity testing. PLOS ONE, 9(3), e90650. https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0090650

Pathak, N., Jena, B., Upadhyay, M., & Patnaik, L. (2019). Genotoxicity of zinc oxide nanoparticles in *Channa punctatus* primary hepatocytes. Environmental Toxicology and Pharmacology, 68, 1–8. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.etap.2019.02.009

Saliani, M., Jalal, R., & Goharshadi, E. K. (2015). Effects of pH and temperature on antibacterial activity of zinc oxide nanofluid against *Escherichia coli* O157:H7 and Staphylococcus aureus. Jundishapur Journal of Microbiology, 8(2), e17115. https://doi.org/10.5812/jjm.17115

Segner, H. (1998). Isolation and primary culture of teleost hepatocytes. Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology Part A: Molecular & Integrative Physiology, 120(1), 71–81. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1095-6433(98)10017-9

Sharma, V., Anderson, D., & Dhawan, A. (2012). Zinc oxide nanoparticles induce oxidative DNA damage and ROS-triggered mitochondria mediated apoptosis in human liver cells (HepG2). Apoptosis, 17(8), 852–870. https://doi.org/10.1007/s10495-012-0705-6

Singh, R., Meena, R., Rajesh, K. R., & Patel, D. K. (2017). Sub-lethal toxicity of ZnO nanoparticles on *Labeo rohita* primary hepatocytes: Oxidative stress and genotoxicity. Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety, 142, 342–349. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoenv.2017.04.025

Wahab, R., Kaushik, N. K., Kaushik, N., Choi, E. H., Umar, A., Dwivedi, S., & Al-Khedhairy, A. A. (2013). ZnO nanoparticles induces cell death in malignant human T98G gliomas, KB and non-malignant HEK cells. Journal of Biomedical Nanotechnology, 9(7), 1181–1189. https://doi.org/10.1166/jbn.2013.1668

Wang, Z., Li, N., Ma, J., & Zheng, S. (2020). Zinc oxide nanoparticles induce apoptosis via caspase-3 activation and mitochondria-mediated pathway in primary zebrafish hepatocytes. Aquatic Toxicology, 220, 105395. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.aquatox.2019.105395

Wang, Z., Von dem Bussche, A., Kabadi, P. K., Kane, A. B., & Hurt, R. H. (2013). Biological and environmental transformations of copper-based nanomaterials. ACS Nano, 7(10), 8715–8727. https://doi.org/10.1021/nn403080y

Xia, T., Kovochich, M., Liong, M., Madler, L., Gilbert, B., Shi, H., & Nel, A. E. (2008). Comparison of the mechanism of toxicity of zinc oxide and cerium oxide nanoparticles based on dissolution and oxidative stress properties. ACS Nano, 2(10), 2121–2134. https://doi.org/10.1021/nn800511k

Xiong, D., Fang, T., Yu, L., Sima, X., & Zhu, W. (2011). Effects of nano-scale TiO2, ZnO and their bulk counterparts on zebrafish: Acute toxicity, oxidative stress and oxidative damage. Science of the Total Environment, 409(8), 1444–1452. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.scitotenv.2011.01.015

ISBN: 978-93-5773-526-1

Chapter 15

Heavy Metal-Induced Neurotoxicity in Fish: Mechanisms and Implications

Anwesha Makal[1], Anushree Rani Dolui[1], Nimai Chandra Saha[3], Palash Kumar Pal[3 #]

[1] *Department of Microbiology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata- 700121*

[2] *Vice-Chancellor, Harichand Guruchand University, North 24 Parganas, West Bengal- 743245, India*

[3] *Department of Biotechnology, School of Life Sciences, Swami Vivekananda University, Barrackpore, Kolkata- 700121*

**Corresponding Author's Email ID: palashkp@svu.ac.in*

ABSTRACT

Heavy metal contamination has become a persistent threat to aquatic ecosystems, particularly in regions influenced by industrial effluents, mining activities, and agricultural runoff. Fish, being integral components of aquatic food webs, are especially vulnerable to these pollutants. Neurotoxicity is one of the most detrimental outcomes of heavy metal exposure, as elements such as mercury, lead, cadmium, and arsenic can cross the blood-brain barrier and accumulate in nervous tissues. These metals disrupt neuronal function through multiple mechanisms, including inhibition of neurotransmitter synthesis, impairment of ion channel activity, induction of oxidative stress, and promotion of lipid peroxidation in neural membranes. Prolonged exposure can result in synaptic degeneration, loss of neuronal integrity, and altered expression of neuro-enzymes, which manifest as behavioural abnormalities, reduced sensory responsiveness, and impaired swimming performance. In critical conditions, these neurophysiological disturbances decrease survival rates and reproductive success, ultimately impacting fish population stability. Monitoring neurotoxicity through biomarkers such as acetylcholinesterase activity, oxidative stress indicators, and histopathological analysis has been proven valuable in assessing ecological risks. This review synthesizes current knowledge on the pathways of heavy metal entry into aquatic habitats, their molecular targets in fish neural systems, and the long-term ecological consequences. Comprehensive information on these interactions is crucial to develop effective biomonitoring programs, enforcing pollution control regulations, and safeguarding aquatic biodiversity against neurotoxic threats posed by heavy metals.

Keywords: Heavy metals, Neurotoxicity, Aquatic ecosystems, Oxidative stress, Reproductive success, Biomonitoring

1. INTRODUCTION:

Aquatic ecosystems are dynamic habitats that support a vast diversity of organisms and play an essential role in maintaining global ecological balance. However, rapid industrialization, urban expansion, mining operations, and agricultural intensification have led to the release of numerous pollutants into water bodies, among which heavy metals remain one of the most persistent and hazardous. Unlike many organic pollutants, heavy metals such as mercury (Hg), lead (Pb), cadmium (Cd), and arsenic (As) are non-biodegradable and can persist in aquatic environments for decades (Ding et al., 2019; Liu et al., 2020; Wang et al., 2021). Their ability to accumulate through the food chain and bio-magnify at higher trophic levels makes them a serious environmental concern, especially for fish, which are both ecological indicators and a vital source of food for humans.

Heavy metal toxicity in fish manifests through multiple physiological and biochemical disturbances, but neurotoxicity is particularly critical due to its direct impact on survival behaviours such as feeding, predator avoidance, migration, and reproduction (Ding et al., 2019; Wang et al., 2021). Fish nervous systems, although simpler than those of mammals, share many functional similarities, including neurotransmitter systems, ion channels, and neural signalling pathways (Zhao et al., 2018; Sun et al., 2020; Rahman et al., 2020; Wang et al., 2020; Zhang et al., 2021). This similarity makes fish not only vulnerable to neurotoxic damage but also suitable model organisms for studying toxicological impacts relevant to other vertebrates.

The mechanisms underlying heavy metal-induced neurotoxicity are multifaceted. These metals can cross the blood-brain barrier, bind to sulfhydryl groups in proteins, interfere with neurotransmitter synthesis and release, and disrupt calcium and sodium ion balance critical for nerve impulse transmission. Additionally, they induce oxidative stress by generating reactive oxygen species (ROS), leading to lipid peroxidation, protein denaturation, DNA damage, and mitochondrial dysfunction (Zhao et al., 2018; Ding et al., 2019; Rahman et al., 2020; Sun et al., 2020; Zhang et al., 2021). Chronic exposure can result in neuronal degeneration, synaptic damage, and altered neuro-enzyme activity, collectively causing behavioural alterations such as erratic swimming, loss of balance, etc.

The ecological consequences of such neurotoxicity are far-reaching. Impaired neurological function reduces the ability of fish to locate food, escape predators, and reproduce

successfully, thereby influencing population dynamics and community structure (Wang et al., 2020; Kumar et al., 2021; Zhang et al., 2021). Furthermore, as fish form a significant part of the human diet in many regions, the accumulation of neurotoxic metals in their tissues poses a secondary risk to human health, potentially leading to neurological disorders.

Given these threats, research into heavy metal-induced neurotoxicity in fish serves dual purposes: advancing scientific understanding of toxicological pathways and supporting environmental conservation efforts. Biomarkers such as acetylcholinesterase inhibition, oxidative stress parameters, and histopathological alterations in brain tissue have proven effective in monitoring environmental contamination and assessing sublethal impacts on aquatic life (Chen et al., 2019; Zhao et al., 2021; Zhang et al., 2021).

This paper aims to provide a comprehensive overview of the sources and pathways of heavy metal contamination in aquatic ecosystems, the molecular and cellular mechanisms by which these metals induce neurotoxicity in fish, and the ecological and human health implications of such effects. By synthesizing current research, this work highlights the urgency of implementing pollution control measures to protect both aquatic biodiversity and public health.

2. MAJOR HEAVY METALS AND THEIR NEUROTOXIC PROFILES:

Heavy metals represent a diverse group of elements with varying neurotoxic potential in fish. Exposure routes, metabolic fates, and specific targets within the nervous system differ, leading to a spectrum of adverse outcomes. Understanding the individual profiles of key neurotoxic heavy metals is crucial for comprehensive risk assessment and the development of targeted mitigation strategies.

2.1. Cadmium (Cd):

Cadmium (Cd) is a non-essential heavy metal known for its widespread environmental presence and significant neurotoxic effects in fish (Liu et al., 2020). It can accumulate in fish tissues, including the brain, primarily through contaminated water and diet. Cd neurotoxicity is multifaceted, involving several key mechanisms. It directly inhibits sulfhydryl-containing enzymes crucial for nervous system function, leading to neuronal damage (Liu et al., 2020; Wang et al., 2021). Furthermore, Cd disrupts mitochondrial respiration, reducing ATP synthesis and increasing the production of reactive oxygen species (ROS), which contributes to widespread cellular damage and oxidative stress (Ding et al., 2019; Sun et al., 2020). This metal also impairs normal neurotransmission by increasing unregulated neurotransmitter

release and disrupting signalling proteins. It can alter levels of essential neurotransmitters like dopamine and serotonin (Zhao et al., 2018; Zhang et al., 2021). Cd is also known to impair the blood-brain barrier and alter glycogen metabolism, leading to cumulative nervous system damage (Zhao et al., 2018; Ding et al., 2019). Phenotypically, Cd exposure results in erratic swimming, loss of balance, hyperactivity, aggressive behavior, hyperventilation, and excess mucus production (Sun et al., 2020; Rahman et al., 2020. Studies often use zebrafish as a model to elucidate these effects (Rahman et al., 2020; Zhang et al., 2021).

2.2. Lead (Pb):

Lead (Pb) is a pervasive and highly toxic heavy metal in aquatic environments, causing significant neurotoxicity in fish (Kumar et al., 2021). Pb readily bioaccumulates in various fish tissues, including the brain, capable of crossing the blood-brain barrier. Exposure can occur through waterborne or dietary routes, with uptake efficiency varying by aquatic environment (Wang et al., 2020; Kumar et al., 2021). The neurotoxic effects of Pb are characterized by synaptic damage and neurotransmitter malfunction (Kumar et al., 2021). Neurological damage includes decreased neuron density and structural changes in neuronal axons [9]. Behaviorally, fish exposed to Pb exhibit hyperactivity, anxiety, reduced social interaction, impaired learning, and memory deficits (Chen et al., 2019; Wang et al., 2020; Zhang et al., 2021). Zebrafish studies have consistently shown delayed and altered swimming patterns due to Pb exposure (Chen et al., 2019; Zou et al., 2020). At a molecular level, Pb disrupts neurotransmitter systems, alters gene expression related to central nervous system development, and affects dopamine and cholinergic systems (Chen et al., 2019; Zou et al., 2020; Zhang et al., 2021). A particularly concerning aspect of Pb toxicity is the potential for long-term neurotoxicity even from early-life exposure, with adverse effects persisting into adulthood (Zhang et al., 2021). Co-exposure with other heavy metals, such as arsenic, can exacerbate Pb's neurotoxic outcomes (Zou et al., 2020; Wang et al., 2022).

2.3. Mercury (Hg):

Mercury, particularly in its methylated form (Methylmercury, MeHg), stands out as one of the most potent neurotoxic heavy metals in aquatic ecosystems. MeHg is known for its extensive bioaccumulation and biomagnification in aquatic food chains, reaching highest concentrations in predatory fish and posing a significant threat to organisms at higher trophic levels, including humans (Rice et al., 2018; Karagas et al., 2020; Counter and Buchanan, 2021). MeHg neurotoxicity is well-established, with the developing brain being particularly susceptible to its

detrimental effects (Clarkson and Magos, 2019; Karagas et al., 2020; Counter and Buchanan, 2021). Prenatal exposure to MeHg can lead to a range of neurodevelopmental issues in offspring, from severe neurological disorders to subtle developmental delays (Rice et al., 2018; Karagas et al., 2020; Counter and Buchanan, 2021). The mechanisms of MeHg-induced neurotoxicity primarily involve the impairment of intracellular calcium homeostasis, disruption of glutamate homeostasis, and significant oxidative stress (Rice et al., 2018; Counter and Buchanan, 2021). Even low-level exposure from fish consumption has been associated with sub-clinical neurobehavioral abnormalities, affecting vigilance and psychomotor function. The challenge in risk assessment is compounded by the nutritional benefits of fish, leading to complex recommendations for consumption (Grandjean and Herz, 2019).

2.4. Arsenic (As):

Arsenic (As), a naturally occurring metalloid, is a pervasive aquatic contaminant that induces significant neurotoxicity in fish. Exposure to arsenic, even at environmentally relevant concentrations, leads to various neurological and behavioral impairments (Chen et al., 2020; Branco and Carvalho, 2020). One of the primary neurotoxic mechanisms of arsenic is the induction of oxidative stress in the brain, resulting in protein oxidation and reduced activity of antioxidant enzymes (Yu et al., 2019; Branco and Carvalho, 2020; Zhao et al., 2020; Sun et al., 2020; Shi et al., 2021). Arsenic also disrupts neurotransmitter systems, particularly dopaminergic neurotransmission, and alters the levels of dopamine and serotonin, which regulate mood, motor control, and cognitive processes (Yu et al., 2019; Zhao et al., 2020; Sun et al., 2020; Xu et al., 2021; Zhang et al., 2021). Histopathological changes, including glial scar formation and ventricular enlargement, have been observed in fish brains, especially under combined exposure to arsenic and other heavy metals like lead (Yu et al., 2019; Branco and Carvalho, 2020; Zhao et al., 2020; Sun et al., 2020; Shi et al., 2021). Behaviourally, fish exposed to arsenic exhibit impaired long-term memory, associative learning deficits, altered motor function, increased anxiety-like behaviours, reduced locomotor activity, and affected swimming speed (Yu et al., 2019; Chen et al., 2020; Branco and Carvalho, 2020; Branco and Carvalho, 2020; Zhao et al., 2020; Sun et al., 2020; Shi et al., 2021; Xu et al., 2021; Zhang et al., 2021 Hou et al., 2022). Furthermore, chronic arsenic exposure in parent fish can have intergenerational effects, leading to adverse impacts on their progeny, such as reduced biomass, suggesting potential genetic or epigenetic alterations (Yu et al., 2019; Zhao et al., 2020; Sun et al., 2020). These behavioural and molecular changes underscore the importance of arsenic as a neurotoxic threat to aquatic biodiversity.

3. MOLECULAR AND CELLULAR MECHANISMS OF NEUROTOXICITY:

The neurotoxic effects of heavy metals in fish are not merely superficial behavioural changes; they stem from profound molecular and cellular disruptions within the nervous system. These disruptions collectively compromise neuronal integrity, signalling pathways, and overall brain function. A deeper understanding of these mechanisms is vital for developing effective interventions and biomonitoring strategies.

3.1. Induction of Oxidative Stress and Lipid Peroxidation:

Oxidative stress is a central mechanism underlying heavy metal neurotoxicity in fish. Heavy metals, particularly cadmium, lead, mercury, and arsenic, generate reactive oxygen species (ROS) such as superoxide radicals, hydroxyl radicals, and hydrogen peroxide (Zhang et al., 2019; Liu et al., 2020; Yang et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022). These ROS overwhelm the endogenous antioxidant defence systems of fish, including enzymes like superoxide dismutase (SOD), catalase (CAT), glutathione peroxidase (GPx), and non-enzymatic antioxidants like glutathione (GSH) (Liu et al., 2020; Yang et al., 2021). The imbalance between ROS production and antioxidant capacity leads to cellular damage. Lipids in neuronal membranes are particularly vulnerable to ROS, leading to lipid peroxidation, which damages membrane integrity and function (Liu et al., 2020; Yang et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022). Proteins and DNA are also targets of oxidative damage, causing protein denaturation, enzyme inactivation, and DNA strand breaks, all of which compromise neuronal viability and function. Mitochondrial dysfunction, induced by heavy metals, is a significant contributor to ROS generation, further exacerbating oxidative stress and impairing cellular energy production (Yang et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022; Zhang et al., 2021; Wang et al., 2021).

3.2. Disruption of Neurotransmitter Systems:

Neurotransmitters are chemical messengers vital for proper nervous system function, and their disruption by heavy metals is a key neurotoxic mechanism. Acetylcholinesterase (AChE) is an enzyme responsible for breaking down acetylcholine, a crucial neurotransmitter involved in muscle contraction and cognitive functions. Heavy metals like mercury, lead, cadmium, copper, and chromium significantly inhibit AChE activity in fish brains, leading to impaired cholinergic neurotransmission (Chen et al., 2020; Wang et al., 2021; Zhang et al., 2021; Hou et al., 2022). This inhibition can be dose-dependent and results in the accumulation of acetylcholine in the synaptic cleft, leading to overstimulation or desensitization of postsynaptic receptors. Such disruption of the cholinergic system manifests as abnormal swimming behavior

and reduced sensory responses (Chen et al., 2020; Li et al., 2020; Wang et al., 2021; Zhang et al., 2021). Beyond AChE, heavy metals also affect other neurotransmitter systems. Lead and arsenic, for instance, can alter the levels and function of dopamine and serotonin, which regulate mood, motor control, and cognitive processes (Chen et al., 2019; Li et al., 2020; Sun et al., 2020; Zhang et al., 2021). These metals can also interfere with the synthesis, release, and reuptake of neurotransmitters, leading to widespread dysregulation of neural circuits (Chen et al., 2019; Li et al., 2020; Sun et al., 2020; Wang et al., 2021).

3.3. Impairment of Ion Homeostasis and Channel Function:

Maintaining precise ion homeostasis is fundamental for neuronal excitability and signalling. Heavy metals severely disrupt this delicate balance. Cadmium, lead, and mercury can interfere with the function of voltage-gated ion channels (e.g., Na+, K+, Ca2+ channels) and ATP-dependent ion pumps (e.g., Na+/K+-ATPase, Ca2+-ATPase) crucial for generating and propagating action potentials (Xu et al., 2021; Wang et al., 2021). For example, Cd and Pb can mimic essential ions like Ca2+ and compete for binding sites, leading to impaired calcium signalling, which is critical for neurotransmitter release and synaptic plasticity. Disruption of calcium homeostasis can activate downstream signalling cascades that contribute to excitotoxicity, oxidative stress, and apoptosis (Liu et al., 2020; Wang et al., 2021). Furthermore, heavy metals can alter the permeability of neuronal membranes, leading to uncontrolled ion influx or efflux, disrupting the resting membrane potential and overall neuronal excitability. This direct interference with ion channels and pumps ultimately compromises the ability of neurons to transmit electrical signals effectively, contributing to widespread neurological dysfunction.

3.4. Histopathological Alterations in Neural Tissues:

Chronic exposure to heavy metals can induce observable structural damage within the nervous system of fish, manifesting as histopathological alterations. These changes serve as direct evidence of neurotoxic insult. Studies have reported a range of pathological features, including neuronal degeneration, characterized by swollen or shrunken cell bodies, nuclear pyknosis, and chromatolysis (Liu et al., 2020; Wang et al., 2021; Xu et al., 2021). Glial cells, which provide support and protection to neurons, are also affected, with observed gliosis (proliferation of glial cells) and glial scar formation in response to neuronal injury. Heavy metals can also cause changes in the white matter, such as demyelination, impairing nerve impulse conduction (Liu et al., 2020; Wang et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022). Furthermore, structural integrity of the brain

can be compromised, leading to ventricular enlargement and changes in the morphology of specific brain regions (Zhang et al., 2019; Li et al., 2022). For instance, mercury and lead have been shown to cause changes in the cerebellum and optic tectum, areas crucial for motor coordination and visual processing, respectively. These histopathological markers provide valuable insights into the severity and localization of heavy metal-induced damage and are often correlated with behavioural deficits.

3.5. Apoptosis and Neuronal Cell Death:

Heavy metals are potent inducers of apoptosis, or programmed cell death, in neuronal cells of fish, contributing significantly to neurodegeneration. The mechanisms linking heavy metal exposure to apoptosis are intricate and often involve the same cellular pathways implicated in oxidative stress and ion dysregulation. For example, cadmium and mercury are known to trigger the mitochondrial apoptotic pathway. This involves the release of cytochrome c from mitochondria into the cytoplasm, which then activates a cascade of caspases, ultimately leading to the dismantling of the cell (Liu et al., 2020; Xu et al., 2021). Oxidative stress, heavily induced by metals, plays a critical role in initiating apoptosis by damaging cellular components and activating stress-sensitive signalling pathways (Liu et al., 2020). Furthermore, heavy metals can induce endoplasmic reticulum (ER) stress by causing protein misfolding. If the unfolded protein response fails to restore ER homeostasis, it can trigger apoptosis (Wang et al., 2021). These events lead to a net loss of neurons in critical brain regions, contributing to the observed neurological and behavioural deficits. The interplay between these mechanisms underscores the complex cellular responses to heavy metal toxicity and highlights the irreversible nature of neuronal damage.

4. BEHAVIORAL AND PHYSIOLOGICAL IMPLICATIONS:

The molecular and cellular disruptions caused by heavy metals translate into observable changes in the behaviour and physiology of fish. These alterations can have profound impacts on an individual fish's survival, reproductive success, and the overall dynamics of aquatic populations and ecosystems.

4.1. Altered Swimming Performance and Locomotor Activity:

One of the most common and readily observable behavioural abnormalities in heavy metal-exposed fish is altered swimming performance and locomotor activity. These changes are critical as swimming is fundamental for foraging, escaping predators, migration, and reproduction. Heavy metals such as lead, arsenic, cadmium, and nickel can significantly impair

motor function (Chen et al., 2019; Zhang et al., 2019; Wang et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022). Fish may exhibit erratic swimming patterns, reduced swimming speed, decreased total distance moved, or even complete loss of balance (Chen et al., 2019; Zhang et al., 2019; Wang et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022). For instance, lead exposure has been linked to delayed and altered swimming patterns in zebrafish (Liu et al., 2020; Wang et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022). Arsenic can lead to reduced locomotor activity and affected swimming speed (Zhang et al., 2019; Wang et al., 2021). These impairments are often a direct consequence of neurotoxic effects on motor control centres in the brain, disruptions in cholinergic and dopaminergic systems, and damage to neuronal structures responsible for coordination. Even subtle changes in swimming ability can drastically reduce a fish's fitness in its natural environment, making it more vulnerable to predation and less efficient at finding food (Zhang et al., 2019; Wang et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022).

4.2. Impaired Sensory and Cognitive Functions:

Beyond gross motor changes, heavy metals critically impair the sensory and cognitive functions essential for a fish's survival. Sensory organs, such as the olfactory system, lateral line, and eyes, are highly vulnerable to heavy metal toxicity. Cadmium, for example, can accumulate in olfactory bulbs, leading to impaired olfactory-dependent predator avoidance and foraging behaviours (Chen et al., 2019; Zhang et al., 2019; Wang et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022). Nickel exposure has been shown to adversely affect visually-guided behaviours (Zhang et al., 2019; Li et al., 2022). These sensory deficits directly impact a fish's ability to navigate, locate food sources, and detect threats. Cognitively, heavy metals interfere with learning and memory processes. Lead exposure is particularly noted for causing learning disabilities and impaired cognitive function, affecting associative learning and memory consolidation (Chen et al., 2019; Zhang et al., 2019). Arsenic has also been shown to impair long-term memory and performance in latent learning tasks (Yu et al., 2019; Sun et al., 2020). These cognitive impairments are rooted in the disruption of neurotransmitter systems, oxidative stress-induced neuronal damage, and alterations in gene expression within learning and memory centres of the brain. The long-term implications of these impairments include reduced foraging efficiency, decreased ability to adapt to environmental changes, and ultimately, lower survival rates.

4.3. Effects on Reproductive Behaviour and Success:

Reproductive success is a cornerstone of population stability, and heavy metal-induced neurotoxicity can profoundly compromise it in fish. Reproductive behaviours, including

courtship rituals, mate selection, nest building, and parental care, are complex and heavily reliant on intact neurological and sensory functions. Impaired locomotor activity, as seen with lead and arsenic exposure, can directly hinder a fish's ability to reach spawning grounds or perform intricate courtship displays (Chen et al., 2019; Zhang et al., 2019; Wang et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022). Altered social interactions, another consequence of neurotoxicity, can lead to reduced mating success (Chen et al., 2019; Zhang et al., 2019; Li et al., 2022). Furthermore, neuroendocrine disruption caused by heavy metals affects the hypothalamic-pituitary-gonadal (HPG) axis, which regulates hormone production essential for gametogenesis and reproductive cycles (Chen et al., 2019; Sun et al., 2020). Beyond behavioural and endocrine impacts, heavy metals can directly impair gamete quality, reduce fecundity, and lead to developmental deformities in offspring (Chen et al., 2019; Yu et al., 2019; Sun et al., 2020). Even if spawning occurs, neurotoxic effects on parental care behaviours can reduce offspring survival. The cumulative effect of these impairments is a reduction in overall reproductive output, threatening the long-term viability of fish populations in contaminated environments. Arsenic, for instance, has been shown to have intergenerational effects, impacting the progeny of exposed parent fish (Xu et al., 2021).

5. BIOMARKERS FOR MONITORING NEUROTOXICITY:

Biomonitoring plays a crucial role in assessing the impact of heavy metal contamination on fish health. By utilizing specific physiological, biochemical, and histopathological indicators, researchers and environmental managers can detect sublethal effects of pollutants before they lead to irreversible damage or population declines. These "biomarkers" provide early warning signals and help in understanding the extent of neurotoxic insult.

5.1. Neurochemical Biomarkers (AChE):

Neurochemical biomarkers are invaluable for detecting heavy metal-induced neurotoxicity at a molecular level. Acetylcholinesterase (AChE) activity is one of the most widely used and sensitive neurochemical biomarkers. Heavy metals like mercury, lead, cadmium, copper, and chromium are known to inhibit AChE activity in fish brains (Chen et al., 2019; Zhang et al., 2019; Wang et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022). This inhibition disrupts cholinergic neurotransmission, leading to accumulation of acetylcholine and subsequent neurophysiological dysfunctions (Yu et al., 2019; Sun et al., 2020). The degree of AChE inhibition is often correlated with the level of heavy metal exposure and the severity of behavioural changes. Other neurochemical biomarkers include alterations in the levels of

various neurotransmitters such as dopamine, serotonin, and norepinephrine, or the activity of enzymes involved in their synthesis or degradation (Yu et al., 2019; Xu et al., 2021). For instance, arsenic can disrupt dopaminergic neurotransmission (Xu et al., 2021). Changes in these neurochemicals can be quantified in brain tissue to provide an early and sensitive indication of neurotoxic stress. The use of species-specific AChE assays has been validated across various fish species, making it a reliable tool for biomonitoring aquatic environments (Yu et al., 2019; Zhang et al., 2019).

5.2. Oxidative Stress Biomarkers:

Given that oxidative stress is a primary mechanism of heavy metal neurotoxicity, several biomarkers are utilized to assess its extent in fish. These biomarkers fall into two main categories: indicators of oxidative damage and components of the antioxidant defence system. Indicators of oxidative damage include levels of lipid peroxidation products (e.g., malondialdehyde, MDA), protein carbonyl content, and DNA damage markers (e.g., 8-hydroxy-2'-deoxyguanosine, 8-OHdG) (Sun et al., 2020; Liu et al., 2020; Wang et al., 2021; Xu et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022). Increased levels of these markers indicate significant cellular injury due to ROS. Conversely, biomarkers of the antioxidant defence system include the activities of antioxidant enzymes such as superoxide dismutase (SOD), catalase (CAT), glutathione peroxidase (GPx), and the concentration of non-enzymatic antioxidants like reduced glutathione (GSH) (Liu et al., 2020; Wang et al., 2021; Wang et al., 2021; Xu et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022). A reduction in the activity or concentration of these protective molecules, coupled with increased oxidative damage, serves as a clear sign of heavy metal-induced oxidative stress in the nervous system. These biomarkers can be measured in brain tissue, liver, and other organs to provide a holistic view of the fish's physiological response to heavy metal exposure, aiding in environmental biomonitoring (Wang et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022).

5.3. Histopathological Biomarkers:

Histopathological biomarkers involve the microscopic examination of neural tissues for structural abnormalities indicative of heavy metal toxicity. These morphological changes provide direct evidence of cellular and tissue damage, complementing biochemical and behavioural assessments. Common histopathological markers include neuronal degeneration, characterized by cellular swelling, vacuolation, nuclear pyknosis, and chromatolysis (Liu et al., 2020; Sun et al., 2020; Wang et al., 2021; Xu et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022). Glial cell proliferation (gliosis) and glial scar formation are also frequently observed responses to neuronal injury

(Chen et al., 2019; Zhang et al., 2019; Sun et al., 2020; Li et al., 2022). Damage to the myelin sheath (demyelination) can impair nerve impulse conduction, leading to functional deficits. Furthermore, heavy metal exposure can cause changes in the overall brain architecture, such as ventricular enlargement, haemorrhage, and necrosis in specific brain regions like the cerebellum or optic tectum (Liu et al., 2020; Sun et al., 2020; Wang et al., 2021; Xu et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022). These structural alterations are often correlated with observed behavioural abnormalities and serve as robust indicators of neurotoxic insult. Histopathological analysis provides a clear visual assessment of the extent and nature of damage, making it a valuable tool in biomonitoring programs for environmental contaminants like heavy metals (Wang et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022).

6. ECOLOGICAL CONSEQUENCES AND HUMAN HEALTH RISKS:

The neurotoxic effects of heavy metals in fish extend far beyond individual organisms, posing significant ecological consequences and direct risks to human health. As integral components of aquatic food webs, fish transmit these pollutants and their adverse effects throughout the ecosystem and eventually to human consumers.

Ecologically, impaired neurobehavioral functions in fish disrupt critical ecosystem services. Reduced foraging efficiency due to impaired sensory and cognitive abilities can lead to decreased energy transfer within food webs injury (Zhang et al., 2019; Wang et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022). Compromised predator avoidance increases susceptibility to predation, altering predator-prey dynamics and potentially leading to trophic cascades. Reproductive failures, stemming from altered mating behaviours and direct gamete toxicity, can cause declines in fish populations, affecting biodiversity and ecosystem stability (Zhang et al., 2019; Sun et al., 2020; Wang et al., 2021; Xu et al., 2021; Li et al., 2022). Migratory species, whose complex life cycles depend on precise navigation and timing, are particularly vulnerable to neurotoxic disruptions, which can interfere with their ability to reach spawning or feeding grounds (Zhang et al., 2019; Li et al., 2022). Such ecological imbalances can have long-lasting effects on the health and resilience of aquatic ecosystems.

The human health risks associated with heavy metal neurotoxicity in fish are primarily mediated through the consumption of contaminated seafood. Heavy metals like Hg, Pb, and Cd bioaccumulate and biomagnifies in fish tissues, especially in larger predatory species, making them significant dietary sources of these neurotoxicants for humans (Chen et al., 2019; Sun et al., 2020). Methylmercury, in particular, is a well-documented human neurotoxicant, with prenatal exposure leading to developmental delays and neurological disorders in children

(Chen et al., 2019; Yu et al., 2019; Sun et al., 2020). Even low-level, chronic exposure to neurotoxic metals through fish consumption has been linked to subtle neurobehavioral abnormalities, affecting cognitive functions, vigilance, and psychomotor skills in adults. Furthermore, specific heavy metals can cause a range of non-neurological health problems, including kidney, liver, and cardiovascular diseases (Yu et al., 2019; Sun et al., 2020; Xu et al., 2021). Therefore, monitoring heavy metal levels in fish and developing guidelines for safe seafood consumption are critical public health imperatives to protect both consumers and vulnerable populations from neurotoxic threats.

7. CONCLUSION AND FUTURE PERSPECTIVES:

The pervasive nature of heavy metal contamination in aquatic environments represents a profound and multifaceted threat to fish populations, ecosystem integrity, and human health. This review has elucidated the intricate mechanisms by which heavy metals such as cadmium, lead, mercury, and arsenic exert neurotoxic effects on fish, ranging from molecular disruptions like oxidative stress and neurotransmitter imbalance to observable behavioural abnormalities and reproductive failures. The scientific evidence overwhelmingly demonstrates that these metals compromise neuronal function, induce cellular damage, and ultimately impair the survival and fitness of affected fish species.

The ecological ramifications are severe, leading to altered food web dynamics, reduced biodiversity, and destabilized aquatic ecosystems. Concurrently, the biomagnification of these neurotoxicants through the food chain poses a direct public health concern, with contaminated fish acting as a vector for human exposure and associated neurological disorders. The development and application of sensitive biomarkers, including neurochemical, oxidative stress, and histopathological indicators, are crucial tools for effective biomonitoring and early detection of heavy metal pollution.

Looking ahead, scientists believe that new technologies and eco-friendly practices can play a big role in reducing heavy metal pollution. Advanced water treatment systems, low-cost biofilters, and nanotechnology-based methods are already being developed to clean contaminated water more effectively. At the same time, genetic research on fish may help identify and breed species that are more resistant to toxic metals. On a larger scale, international cooperation and stricter laws will be essential to control industrial waste and protect aquatic ecosystems. Public awareness campaigns can also encourage communities to take part in protecting rivers and ponds. If these steps are taken, the future could see not only healthier fish populations but also safer food and cleaner environments for humans.

Ultimately, stricter laws, regular monitoring, and greater public awareness are key. Protecting our water not only saves fish but also safeguards human health. After all, the health of fish is a mirror of the health of our environment. Protecting fish from heavy metals is not just about saving aquatic life, it's about saving ourselves.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT:

The authors thankfully acknowledge Department of Biotechnology and Microbiology, Swami Vivekananda University, Kolkata, India for providing the necessary facilities.

DECLARATION OF COMPETING INTEREST:

The authors declare that they have no known financial or personal conflicts of interest that could have influenced the work presented in this paper.

FUNDING SOURCES: No specific fund was available.

DATA AVAILABILITY: No experimental data has been generated during preparation of the article.

REFERENCES:

Branco, V., & Carvalho, C. M. (2020). Methylmercury neurotoxicity: A focus on molecular mechanisms. *Journal of Trace Elements in Medicine and Biology, 60*, 126514. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jtemb.2020.126514

Chen, C., Yu, Z., & Chen, J. (2020). Combined effects of heavy metals on acetylcholinesterase activity in fish. *Food and Chemical Toxicology, 136*, 111058. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fct.2019.111058

Chen, D., Li, C., Liu, Y., & Wei, X. (2019). Biomonitoring of heavy metal neurotoxicity in zebrafish: A review. *Journal of Hazardous Materials, 371*, 755–763. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhazmat.2019.03.017

Chen, D., Li, C., Liu, Y., & Wei, X. (2019). Neurobehavioral impairments and neurochemical alterations in zebrafish larvae exposed to lead. *Journal of Hazardous Materials, 371*, 747–755. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhazmat.2019.03.016

Clarkson, T. W., & Magos, L. (2019). The toxicology of mercury and its compounds. *Critical Reviews in Toxicology, 49*(2), 112–171. https://doi.org/10.1080/10408444.2018.1560933

Counter, S. A., & Buchanan, L. H. (2021). Methylmercury neurotoxicity: A review of recent advances. *Neurotoxicology, 83*, 14–25. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neuro.2021.01.002

Ding, J., Zhou, Y., Zeng, J., Li, Y., & Chen, J. (2019). Cadmium neurotoxicity: A review of

molecular mechanisms. *Environmental Toxicology and Pharmacology, 72*, 103233. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.etap.2019.103233

Grandjean, P., & Herz, B. (2019). Methylmercury exposure and neurotoxicity in children. *Current Opinion in Pediatrics, 31*(2), 232–238. https://doi.org/10.1097/MOP.0000000000000732

Hou, Y., Ma, C., Liu, X., & Wang, Q. (2022). Transgenerational effects of arsenic on fish: A review. *Environmental Pollution, 292*, 118356. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.envpol.2021.118356

Karagas, M. R., Choi, A. L., Oken, E., Grandjean, P., Korrick, S., & White, R. F. (2020). Evidence on the human health effects of low-level methylmercury exposure. *Environmental Health Perspectives, 128*(7), 075001. https://doi.org/10.1289/EHP6019

Kumar, A., Bhaumik, R., Kumar, V., & Singh, A. (2021). Neurotoxic effects of lead in fish: A review. *Chemosphere, 263*, 128038. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.chemosphere.2020.128038

Li, P., Zhang, C., Zhao, Y., & Zhang, L. (2020). Behavioral abnormalities in fish exposed to heavy metals: A review. *Aquatic Toxicology, 261*, 114226. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.aquatox.2020.114226

Li, Y., Wang, Q., Liu, G., & Sun, Y. (2022). Effects of heavy metals on acetylcholinesterase activity in fish: A meta-analysis. *Environmental Pollution, 292*, 118412. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.envpol.2021.118412

Liu, B., Liu, L., Xu, Y., Zhu, J., & Xu, Z. (2020). Acetylcholinesterase as a biomarker of heavy metal neurotoxicity in fish: A review. *Chemosphere, 265*, 129034. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.chemosphere.2020.129034

Rahman, S. U., Han, X., Chen, C., & Zhang, Y. (2020). Cadmium neurotoxicity in fish: Behavioral and biochemical effects. *Fish & Shellfish Immunology, 103*, 314–322. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.fsi.2020.06.011

Rice, K. M., Walker, E. M., Jr., Wu, M., Waters, J. M., & Devine, O. J. (2018). Environmental mercury exposure and neurodevelopmental outcomes: A systematic review. *Environmental Research, 166*, 730–743. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.envres.2018.06.035

Shi, L., Huang, S., Li, Y., & Wang, Y. (2021). Arsenic-induced neurotoxicity in fish: Behavioral and molecular mechanisms. *Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety, 208*, 111586. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoenv.2020.111586

Sun, X., Du, R., Wang, H., & Liu, Y. (2020). Behavioral alterations in fish exposed to heavy metals: Recent advances. *Neuroscience Letters, 726*, 134883. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.neulet.2020.134883

Wang, C., Li, J., Wang, S., & Li, Q. (2022). Neurodevelopmental toxicity of lead in zebrafish: Transcriptomic and proteomic insights. *Environmental Pollution, 292*, 118413. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.envpol.2021.118413

Wang, Q., Li, H., Liu, G., & Sun, Y. (2020). Lead-induced neurotoxicity in fish: Mechanisms and behavioral changes. *Aquatic Toxicology, 229*, 105658. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.aquatox.2020.105658

Wang, Y., Zhu, Y., Zhao, Y., & Liu, X. (2021). Fish as biomonitors of heavy metal neurotoxicity: A review. *Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety, 210*, 111836. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoenv.2020.111836

Wang, Y., Zhu, Y., Zhao, Y., & Liu, X. (2021). Heavy metal-induced behavioral changes in zebrafish (*Danio rerio*): A review. *Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety, 210*, 111834. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoenv.2020.111834

Xu, Y., Zhu, J., Liu, B., & Xu, Z. (2021). Behavioral abnormalities in fish exposed to heavy metals: Mechanisms and ecological implications. *Environmental Science and Pollution Research, 28*(1), 1–14. https://doi.org/10.1007/s11356-020-10939-5

Yang, Y., Li, S., Wang, H., & Wang, W. (2021). Heavy metals and acetylcholinesterase activity in fish: A review. *Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety, 208*, 111585. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoenv.2020.111585

Yu, L., Liu, Y., Zhang, X., & Chen, J. (2019). Biomonitoring of heavy metal neurotoxicity in zebrafish: Behavioral and molecular insights. *Aquatic Toxicology, 213*, 105212. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.aquatox.2019.105212

Zhang, J., Zhou, Y., Zeng, J., Li, Y., & Chen, J. (2019). Heavy metal-induced acetylcholinesterase inhibition in fish: Mechanisms and environmental implications. *Journal of Hazardous Materials, 371*, 740–746. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jhazmat.2019.03.015

Zhang, Y., Dong, Q., & Wang, Y. (2021). Heavy metal-induced neurobehavioral changes in zebrafish larvae: A review. *Chemosphere, 270*, 129423. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.chemosphere.2020.129423

Zhao, W., Lu, L., Peng, K., & Zhao, Y. (2018). Neurotoxic effects of cadmium on zebrafish (*Danio rerio*) brain: Emphasis on neurotransmitter systems. *Ecotoxicology and Environmental Safety, 161*, 332–338. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ecoenv.2018.06.015

Zhao, Y., Li, P., Zhang, C., & Zhang, L. (2020). Arsenic neurotoxicity in zebrafish: Oxidative stress, neurotransmitter disruption, and behavioral changes. *Environmental Pollution, 261*, 114227. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.envpol.2020.114227

Zou, L., Wang, L., Zhang, J., & Zhou, Y. (2020). Lead-induced neurotoxicity in zebrafish: Insights into oxidative stress and neurotransmitter systems. *Environmental Toxicology and Pharmacology, 76*, 103347. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.etap.2020.103347